



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





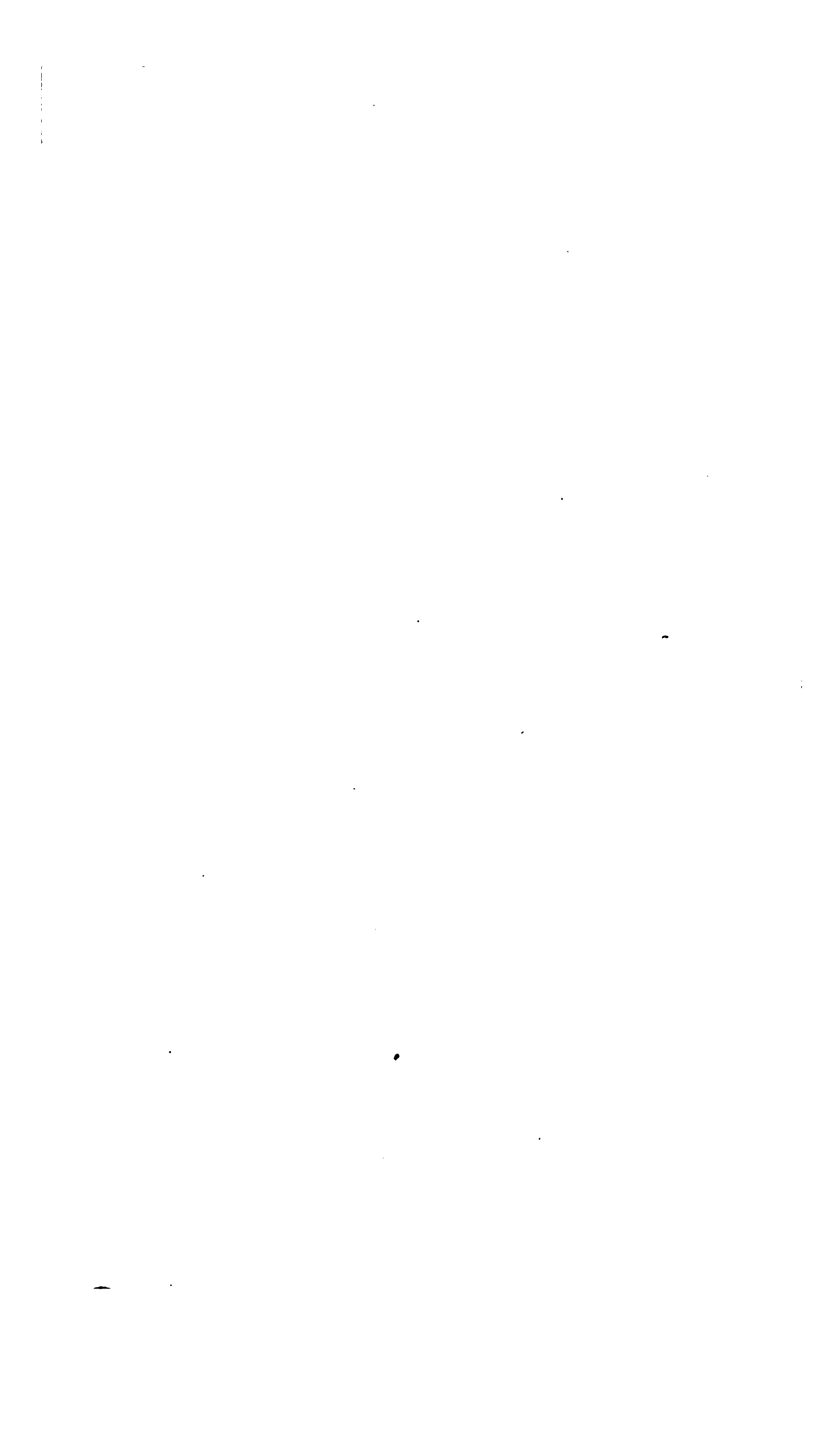
600004688W

26.470.



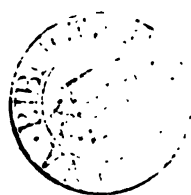






**ANNALS OF THE HOUSE OF HANOVER.**







Chantrey, Sculptor.

Keynolds. Excelebatur.

GEORGIUS QUARTUS.

*J.H. 1826*  
**ANNALS**

OF THE

**HOUSE OF HANOVER,**

COLLECTED AND ARRANGED BY

**SIR ANDREW HALLIDAY, M.D., F.R.S.E.,**

FELLOW OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF GÖTTINGEN, KNIGHT OF THE  
ORDER OF GUELPH, LICENTIATE OF THE COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS, AND DOMESTIC  
PHYSICIAN TO H.R.H. THE DUKE OF CLARENDON.

---

IN TWO VOLUMES.

---

VOLUME I.

---

LONDON:  
PRINTED FOR WILLIAM SAMS,  
ROYAL LIBRARY, ST. JAMES'S STREET.

MDCCCXXVI.

*47<sup>o</sup>.*



LONDON:  
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES,  
Northumberland-court



## To the King.

---

SIRE,

AFTER six years of unremitting labour and research, I have the honour of laying at your Majesty's feet, a more complete and authentic history of your Majesty's illustrious House than has ever been attempted by any other writer. I may, perhaps, fail in acquiring, by this work, any distinction for my genius, yet I trust that I ~~shall~~ be entitled to some commendation for my industry; and I humbly pray that your Majesty will accept of these Annals, as a sincere, though feeble testimony of my attachment and devotion to your Majesty's person and family.

I have the honour to be, with the most profound respect,

SIRE,

Your Majesty's very humble

And faithful Subject and Servant,

ANDREW HALLIDAY.

*Hampton-Court, 4th April, 1826.*



## P R E F A C E.

---

A COLLECTION of valuable documents, illustrative of the History of the House of Brunswick and Luneburg, having been made under the immediate auspices of HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS THE DUKE OF CLARENCE, by my friend the Rev. George Gündell, A.M., Chaplain-general of the Hanoverian army, myself, and others, during my residence with His Royal Highness in Germany, I employed my leisure hours, after my return to England, in preparing them for the press; and in order to shew more clearly their various bearings and connexion with general history, was induced to add a brief memoir of the illustrious line of Princes, whose deeds these documents have handed down to posterity.

While occupied with the ancient renown of the Princes of Brunswick, I could not but feel strongly attracted to a consideration of the existing state of their hereditary dominions; and in a supplementary chapter, I brought together the results of my own

observations and inquiries, during my residence at the Court of Hanover.

The volume which was the fruit of these different labours, had the honour of receiving the approbation of our most liberal and enlightened Sovereign, and was presented (with His Majesty's sanction) to the public in December, 1820.

Though published in a form too expensive to give it much chance of a very extended circulation, that volume is now, I believe, entirely out of print, and to be found only in the libraries of the curious. It was, necessarily, little more than a collection of historical documents, and, notwithstanding the great labour I had bestowed in arranging, translating, and correcting the multifarious papers of which it was composed, I was by no means disappointed, in finding it received rather as the production of an industrious Antiquary, than the more attractive effort of the methodical historian.

The documents, however, which it contained, were admirably calculated to supply the deficiencies in a branch of European history, no less remarkable for the neglect with which it had hitherto been treated, than for the richness and interest of the materials with which it abounded, and I accordingly

felt the necessity of attempting to give them a more popular form. I was desirous also of correcting the gross errors and absurdities of the only English works that exist on the subject, and very ambitious of rendering familiar to the British nation, the true history of an Illustrious Family whose beneficent sway is identified with every blessing it enjoys.

With these sentiments I continued my labours ; and, taking my former Memoir as my guide, have endeavoured to give to the whole the connected form of regular annals, and to impart to them some of that ease and polish necessary to distinguish historical compositions from dry antiquarian researches. The present is, therefore, altogether a new work, enriched, I may safely affirm, by a great many interesting and important facts previously little known, and never before published ; and, compared with its predecessor, much improved in literary merit.

In committing these Annals to the press in their present form, I do so without dread, yet not without anxiety. I feel assured that I have at least the praise of meaning well by my attempts to supply the British nation with a record, which had previously no existence in their own or any other language ; and if I can but further gain the



commendation of having toiled for six years not wholly in vain, but somewhat to the honour of my Sovereign and his family, and the profit of his people, my fullest ambition will be gratified.

---

# CONTENTS

## OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

---

### Book I.

	Page
Account of the People and Kingdoms established in Germany, Italy, and France, in the early Ages . . . . .	1

### Book II.

Account of the Origin and Progress of the Western Empire under Charlemagne and his Successors; with the History of the Guelphic Princes, during that Period . . . . .	57
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

### Book III.

Sketch of the History of the Western Empire under the Saxon and Franconian Dynasties; with the History of the Ancestors of the House of Hanover during that Period . . . . .	112
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----

### Book IV.

History of Henry the Lion . . . . .	187
-------------------------------------	-----

### Book V.

History of the Sons of Henry the Lion . . . . .	337
-------------------------------------------------	-----

---

Notes and Illustrations . . . . .	397
-----------------------------------	-----

*Directions for placing the Portraits to Vol. I.*

		Page
1.	Portrait of the King . . . . . to face the Title	
2.	„ Guelph V. . . . . to face	152
3.	„ Henry the Black . . . . .	165
4.	„ Henry the Proud . . . . .	170
5.	„ Henry the Lion . . . . .	187
6.	„ the Princess Matilda . . . . , . .	235
7.	„ William, Prince of Luneburg . . . .	390

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
HOUSE OF HANOVER.

---

BOOK I.

CONTAINING SOME ACCOUNT OF THE PEOPLE AND  
KINGDOMS ESTABLISHED IN GERMANY, ITALY,  
AND FRANCE, IN THE EARLY AGES.

IN tracing the origin of any modern European nation, through the dark ages of its history, it is often necessary to search through a thousand pages for a single fact, and to compare the chronicles of several ages, to fix with certainty on particular dates. Until a very advanced period, comparatively speaking, in the history of Greece and Rome, we know very little of the people who dwelt in the most fertile districts of the earth, and absolutely nothing of the savage hordes that inhabited the dreary regions of the north; the origin, there-

BOOK I.  
—

BOOK I.  
—

Roman authors the first who give us any account of the northern tribe.

fore, of the nations who first spread over Germany has been so long involved in obscurity, that it cannot now be traced with any degree of certainty. There are some recent discoveries\* which may lead us to suppose that the adventurous Phoenicians had established their colonies in some of the inland provinces, but as the vast continent of Europe must have been peopled long before their day, we can only suppose that its first inhabitants had made their way from that country where the Ark rested after the Flood, and from which, without the aid of boats or ships, the inventions of later times, they could make their daily journeys through the wilds that surrounded them, and penetrate by land to the farthest verge of the western continent. It is not until a very late date in their own annals, that the Roman authors give us any account of the German nations. Their country lay at too great a distance from Italy to be early invaded, and it was only from the invasion of Gaul, and threatened invasion of Italy by two savage tribes, the Cimbri and Teutones, in the century previous to the Christian era, that the

\* Vide *Das Magusanische Europa*, by FREYHERN VON DOMOP, Sachsen Meiningschen vice-canslar, 2 vols. 8vo. Meinigen, 1819—21.

Roman historians became aware of the existence of these northern barbarians. These tribes, we are told, had emigrated from the shores of the Baltic, had plundered and laid waste the countries through which they advanced to the south, and after warring against the Gauls and Romans for a period of twelve years, had finally settled on the northern bank of the Rhine.

BOOK I.  
—

Julius Cæsar was the first who led the Roman legions beyond the Rhine, and although his successors made their way through Germany to the river Elbe, and may be said to have conquered the country to that extent, the people were with difficulty kept in subjection. For ages subsequent to the time of Cæsar, many of the nations who dwelt in Germany were still unknown to the Romans, and therefore no account of them has been preserved; while even those with whom the invaders came in contact, being too illiterate, and too much engaged in war and pillage, to have any written memorials of their own; and too jealous of their enemies to admit of any social intercourse, are but imperfectly described. The Romans knew so little of the interior of the country, or its traditions, the only record of its inhabitants, that the

Julius Cæsar first  
crossed the Rhine.



BOOK I.  

---

accounts which they have given are to be regarded more as the casual remarks of intelligent men, or what they observed during the rapid march of an invading army, than as any just estimate of the German people, or an unbiassed account of their character and customs. The country, as they have described it, was covered with impenetrable forests, extensive lakes, and dangerous morasses, while the people, in as far as they could judge, with most of the vices that cling to man in his savage state, displayed many what might be called distinct or national virtues. Their division into separate tribes or nations had been long established; and although civilization and knowledge had made greater progress in some tribes than in others, there appeared sufficient evidence in their religion, language, and general customs, to create a belief that they had all originally been one people\*.

The Germans were at all times the most enterprising amongst the foes of the Roman power, and when dissension and civil discord began to sap the foundation of that power, they were the

\* Vide TACITUS *de Moribus Germanorum*; CÆSAR'S *Commentaries*; PLINY, &c.

BOOK I.  

---

first to drive the invaders from their soil. In less than a hundred years from the days of Cæsar, they had secured the freedom of their own country; and by the middle of the third century of the Christian era, the Franks, a band of German freebooters, had established themselves as an independent state, in the very heart of Gaul. In proportion as the Roman influence began to decline in Europe, the *Goths*, the general appellation of the German people, began to spread their conquests in every direction. As savage warriors, they became the scourge of the civilized world, and were long the terror of the human race. The names of many of the Gothic tribes are still preserved in the countries which they first occupied in Germany, or in the kingdoms they afterwards established in Europe; but by far the greater number of these tribes have perished, and their names are only to be found in the pages of the Roman history, or in the more voluminous records of the German antiquaries.

Franks established  
in Gaul.

The Goths had scarcely ceased from their ravages, and prepared themselves to settle in the countries they had taken possession of, when the Huns, a still more barbarous race of

Huns appear in Europe.

## BOOK I.

A.D. 430.

people, made their appearance in Germany, destroying whatever had been left of civilization, and with the desire, as it seemed, of turning the world into a desert, they spread their armies over the whole of the continent. The first ancestor of the Guelphic family being traced to this period, it becomes necessary to enter more into detail, and by combining the general history of these times with the more detached records of this family, the reader will be enabled to trace, in a connected form, the personal history of the illustrious ancestors of the House of Hanover.

Attila, king of the  
Huns, Alans, &c.

About the period that Hengist and Horsa, with their Saxon followers, first landed in England, Rugila, the king or chief of the barbarous Huns, died, and left his states under the government of his two nephews, Bleda and Attila. The latter being of too ambitious a mind to admit of any equal in the government, soon found means to depose his elder brother, and to cause himself to be declared sole ruler of the Huns, Alans, and all the other nations that dwelt on the banks of the Danube. In his father's lifetime Attila had commanded his savage mercenaries in the army of Valentinian ;

and for a time had assisted in fighting the battles of the empire. His early intercourse, therefore, with disciplined armies had given him a perfect knowledge of the military tactics of the age, and by his natural disposition and talents, he seemed formed to command. The number of his followers, and his intimate acquaintance with the art of war, made him greatly superior to Alaric the Goth, and his power and policy soon compelled the greater number of the Gothic tribes to join his standard. For a time he retained the rank, and compelled the emperor to pay him the allowances, of a Roman general ; while as king of the Huns he received ambassadors from the surrounding nations, and assumed the tone of a dictator in regard to peace or war. When he wished to reward a favourite general, he sent him on a mission to Constantinople, and such was even then the feeble state of the empire, that the recommendation of this savage chief bore the force of a command.

BOOK I.  
—

It was about the year 449 that Attila formed the design of taking possession of the country of Gaul, where, though the Romans still maintained an influence, the Franks and other nor-

Attila invades Gaul.

A.D. 449.

## BOOK I

thern tribes had acquired a firm establishment. Before he began his march, he sent two of his generals and chief favourites, EDICO and ORESTES, who were the primates or kings of two of the Gothic nations in his army, to acquaint the Emperor Theodosius that his object in advancing with so large an army was to take vengeance for an insult he had received from the king of the Visigoths. At the same time he despatched another embassy to Theodoric, the Gothic king, to exhort him to renounce the alliance of the Romans, and to join him in taking revenge for the bad faith which had been shewn them in former times. This species of intrigue served to keep the Romans and the Goths ignorant of his real intentions. And it was not till the main body of the Huns had crossed the Rhine, that they became aware of the deceit that had been practised. Ætius, the Roman general, who commanded in Gaul, having been joined by the Franks, Saxons, Burgundians, and others, was able, with the Visigoths, to drive the invader back into Germany, with a loss, it is said, of more than two hundred thousand men. Attila retired to Pannonia, where his army was speedily recruited,

and being determined to undertake a more profitable campaign, he marched along the shores of the Adriatic, crossed the Alps, and threatened to lay Italy desolate. Many provinces were indeed destroyed, but the empire was saved, not by the valour of her armies, but by the eloquence of the Bishop of Rome, who penetrating the camp of Attila, prevailed upon him to retire from Italy, and to accept of a sum of money as an annual tribute, and the emperor's sister Honoria as his bride. It was during a debauch which followed the arrival of the unfortunate Roman princess at the camp of the savages, that Attila burst a blood-vessel, and died suddenly, thus relieving the empire from the terror of his arms, and the Gothic tribes from the tyranny of his government.

## BOOK I.

Attila invades Italy,  
A.D. 452.

A.D. 453—4.

Among the nations that had submitted to the rule of Attila, the records of that unsettled period most particularly mention the SCYRRI, and as it is sometimes written, Hirri or Heruli, whose chief or king, EDICO, was the favourite \* of the Hun, and, as we have stated, one of his ambassadors to the court of Theodosius. The Scyrri are one of the nations mentioned by

Scyrri, one of the nations that joined Attila, settle in Pannonia.

\* Επιστηδαιον.



## BOOK I

Pliny, and if we can trust to the commentaries that have been written upon Pliny's text, they were, in his day, inhabitants of the marshy country in Swedish Pomerania, and in possession of several of the Danish Islands about the mouth of the Great Belt.

A.D. 455.

The power which had been acquired by the personal talents of Attila, rather than by the numbers that had submitted to his government, was soon lost by the imbecility and civil dissensions of his sons; and the Scyrri, with the other Gothic tribes, on the return of the army from Italy, settled in what was called the kingdom of Pannonia, on the banks of the Danube. But as neither the times nor the habits of the people admitted of their living together in social union, we find that, when fixed in their new residence, they began, more as free-booters than regular troops, to levy contributions upon the neighbouring states. The *Suevi*, one of the most warlike and restless of the German tribes, celebrated as such even in the days of Cæsar, were still incapable of remaining at peace. They began to plunder the province of Dalmatia, which lay contiguous to Pannonia; and while engaged in their pre-

Predatory warfare of the Suevi and Goths, which involves the Scyrri.

datory excursions, occasionally met the Ostrogoths, another nation of plunderers. Mutual jealousy led to partial skirmishes, and Walimir, the king of the Ostrogoths, being determined to drive the Suevi from the country which he considered in some measure as his own, watched for a favourable opportunity; and when Hunnimund, the chief of the Suevi, and his followers, were returning from Dalmatia laden with spoil, he fell upon them with his Ostrogoths, and so unexpectedly, that Hunnimund and his marauders were all made prisoners. When stript of their plunder, they were allowed, upon taking an oath to remain in peace, to return to their own country. The Suevi, however, were too proud to allow such a defeat to pass unrevenged, and they had no sooner reached their own territory, than they began to form a coalition among their neighbours, and the *Scyrii* with others were prevailed upon to join Hunnimund in a war against the Ostrogoths. Walimir made every preparation to meet his enemies, but in the first severe action that took place he lost his life. His followers fought with so much bravery that they gained the victory, and we are

BOOK I.  
—

A.D. 456.

BOOK I. told that the Scyrri, the allies of the perfidious Suevi, were almost entirely destroyed. This defeat led the Scyrri, now considered in some measure as principals, to re-inforce their army, by calling to their aid the Gepidæ and Rugen islanders; while the Suevi, on their part, were joined by the Sarmatæ and others, and were enabled once more to enter the country of the Ostrogoths with a very considerable force. They were met by the Ostrogoths and their allies on the bank of the river Bollia, and after a hard fought battle were defeated, with the loss

A.D. 456. of nearly ten thousand men. In this action the

Edico and Guelph,  
kings or princes of  
the Scyrri, killed.

Succeeded by Odoacer,  
son of Edico.

in person; and there is reason to believe that not only Edico, but also *Guelph*, his son or brother, was killed at the head of the army. The historian \* who has given us the details of this battle, says expressly, that the Scyrri were entirely cut off; and we find that the remains of the defeated army retired towards the Baltic coast, under the command of ODOACER, the son of Edico, who is subsequently styled king of the Rugii and Heruli, and who evidently had been left in the govern-

\* Jornandez.

BOOK I.  
—

ment of the original country of the Scyrri, when his father and brother settled in Pannonia. From the rank which Edico held in his own nation, that of prince or king, and the influence which he obtained at the court of Attila, we have little difficulty in tracing up to his day the annals of the Guelphic Family. In the record of the battle in which he fell, the name of *Guelph* first occurs, and from that Prince being styled the equal in rank of Edico, there can be no doubt of his being either a son or brother. This, though a matter of curiosity, is not of importance, as the succession is undoubtedly carried on by the sons of Edico.

ODOACER, as we have stated, withdrew his countrymen from the neighbourhood of Pannonia, and on the shores of the Baltic began to re-organize his scattered subjects. He had been brought up in the camp of the Romans, and had accompanied his father to Constantinople. In the court of Theodosius he had studied the refinements of civilization, and in the hut of Attila the science of war. He was a prince whose genius was superior to the age in which he was born, and whose talents were equal to

Odoacer and the broken army retire to the Baltic coast.

## BOOK I.

A.D. 460.

deeds of greater note than the simple government of a petty nation of barbarians. It is evident that in the camp of the Huns he had imbibed somewhat of the spirit and ambition of their leader. He was a prince of commanding but affable manners, and most strict in adhering to the simple habit and customs of his own people.

If we can judge from subsequent events, it was in the woody wilds of the small island of Rugen, that he matured the plans which led to the invasion of Italy, and the subversion of the western empire. Soon after his father's death, he was called upon to take a part in the civil wars of Italy, and to support the interest of Orestes, his father's friend.

Orestes, the friend and colleague of Edico, master of the empire.

ORESTES, the friend and colleague of Edico, through the influence of the German auxiliaries under the command of Odoacer, made himself master of the empire, and having driven the Emperor Julius Nepos from Ravenna, he placed his own son on the throne, under the name of Romulus Augustulus; but being unable afterwards to fulfil his engagements to these Germans, they rebelled against his authority, caused

Deposed and murdered by the Germans, under Odoacer, who is proclaimed king of Italy, A.D. 476.

him to be murdered, and his son deposed, while the chiefs of the several nations joined in proclaiming their leader king of Italy.

BOOK I.

A.D. 478.

Odoacer and his followers advanced upon Rome, and took possession of the city in 476. The army sent ambassadors to Constantinople, to demand for their chief the ensigns of royalty, while Odoacer instructed them to assure the Emperor Zeno, who then reigned, that the people of Italy wished for no other emperor than the sovereign of the east, and that they had only chosen him to reign as king or viceroy. The demand of the ambassadors not being granted, Odoacer retained the title of king, but never assumed the external symbols of that rank, and though the whole of Italy acknowledged his power, he continued to live as a simple soldier. Notwithstanding his success in the south, his own countrymen, headed by an intriguing and ambitious prince, began to rebel against his authority. This obliged him to leave Ravenna, and hasten to the Baltic. The rebellion was easily quelled, and Fava, the Prince in whose favour it had been raised, was, with his Princess, carried a prisoner into Italy. Another attempt to throw off the authority of

His northern subjects rebel against Odoacer.

BOOK I.  
—

Odoacer, was made by the inhabitants of Rugen, a few years afterwards, at the instigation of Fredrick, the son of Fava, but being suppressed, Odoacer left his brother Anulphus or Guelph in command of the country. Fredrick, who had fled to the court of Theodoric, the king of the Ostrogoths, by representing his own and his father's wrongs, prevailed upon the Goths to take up arms against the king of Italy. Theodoric was easily persuaded to undertake a cause which coincided with his own views; but before he ventured upon such an important campaign, he was resolved to obtain the countenance and sanction of the eastern emperor. This was soon accomplished, as the Ostrogoths then established in Thrace, having revolted against Zeno, were on the point of laying siege to Constantinople; and the emperor, to avoid his own ruin, voluntarily offered to make over to them the Italian provinces, and to secure them in the possession of whatever they might recover from the king Odoacer. Theodoric, flattered with the idea of becoming king of the Romans, left the walls of the eastern capital, and ordered his army to march towards Italy; and so certain were his followers of success in this

Ostrogoths united to  
conquer Italy from  
Odoacer.

expedition, that they directed their wives and families, and the whole of their effects, to accompany the army.

BOOK I.

Odoacer was soon made acquainted with the preparations and movements of his enemies, and, collecting together the forces with which he had conquered and still held possession of Italy, he took up a position on the banks of the river Ifonso, where he awaited the approach of the Ostrogoths. In the first engagement he was driven from his position, and the frontier of Italy being left open Theodoric marched into the kingdom. Though repulsed, Odoacer was not yet conquered. His army was re-organized, and his next encampment was in the neighbourhood of Verona. A second action was also in favour of the Goths, but the king of Italy had still resources, and having succeeded in detaching his kinsman Fredrick, and the Rugen islanders from the army of Theodoric, the advantage was for a time on his side. A third general action, which took place in the following year, was more decisive in favour of Theodoric, and he was able to overrun Italy, and to compel the cities that could not be taken by storm, to submit through famine. After having

Invasade that king-  
dom.



## BOOK I.

A.D. 486.

got possession of the most important places in the kingdom, he returned to Ravenna, that he might carry on the siege of that city in person.

Odoacer was now compelled to bring into play all the resources of his superior mind, and he did not fail to give the most distinguishing proofs of his judgment, and unsubdued courage. He placed himself at the head of his brave garrison, and in the middle of a dark night, they made a general attack upon the army of the besiegers. The troops of Theodoric were thrown into confusion, an immense number were killed, while the rest, with their king, took to flight.

Ostrogoths beaten,  
but rallied and after-  
wards overcome the  
troops of Odoacer.

In the midst of this apparent ruin, Theodoric accidentally encountered his mother, who ashamed of the terror he displayed, is said to have rebuked his cowardice in no very measured terms. She told him, among many bitter taunts, that a prince who was weak enough to attempt to save himself by flight from the face of his enemies, ought to take refuge in the womb of his mother, or rather ought never to have left it. Touched by these reproaches, Theodoric made an attempt to rally his fugitives, and having succeeded, he returned unexpectedly upon the army of Odoacer, already engaged

in pillaging his camp. While dispersed and in confusion, he attacked them with vigour, gained an easy victory, and pursued them to the very gates of Ravenna.

BOOK I.

For two years Odoacer was able to defend his capital, but disease and famine began to thin his ranks. The Goths too had become impatient, and both sovereigns being disposed to treat, the bishop of Ravenna found little difficulty in negotiating a peace, by which it was agreed, that the supreme power in Italy should be divided between the two kings. Theodoric was not long satisfied with the terms he had agreed to : he invited his colleague to a splendid feast, where he caused him to be assassinated, pretending as his excuse, that he had certain information that Odoacer had sworn to effect his ruin.

Ravenna defended  
for two years.

Odoacer assassinated, A.D. 489.

ANULPHUS or Guelph, the brother of Odoacer, who had been occupied in keeping the northern nations in subjection, was on his way to Italy when he learnt the murder of the king. He had the command of a numerous army, but it was not of sufficient strength to cope with the overwhelming power of the Goths. He therefore determined to take possession of a country for himself, and seizing upon the

Anulphus or Guelph,  
brother of Odoacer,  
takes possession of  
the mountainous  
country of the Tyrol.

**BOOK I.** Tyrol, he sent the Roman colonists into Italy, and put his troops in possession of the cities they had built.

The nature of the country in which he had thus fixed his residence, bounded as it is by the Rhoetian Alps, afforded to Anulphus a sufficient protection against any sudden attack from the Goths; but to render his position still more secure, he entered into an alliance with the Suevi and others his neighbours, while he solicited and obtained the support of the Franks. Having married the daughter of the king of the Suevi, he spent the remainder of his life in organizing his new state; and his army having intermingled with the Boiarii, the natives of the soil, their several names and designations were forgotten, and the whole came to be known as the Boiobarii, or Bavarian nation.

Anulphus succeeded by his son Olfigandus, about A.D. 530:

Anulphus left one, son named OLFIGANDUS, who, instead of assuming the supreme power in Bavaria, joined, as a volunteer, the army of the empire. This it is said he did, that he might have it in his power more effectually to avenge the murder of his uncle; but it is also probable that a love of glory had some share in

fixing his determination. The military talents of Belisarius, the general of Justinian, had already given a new spirit to the imperial troops; the fame he had acquired by his victories in Persia, and in the expulsion of the Vandals from Africa, had attracted thousands to his standard. When he passed over into Sicily, success everywhere attended his movements, and there was no longer a doubt of his being able to drive the Ostrogoths from Italy. In 536 Belisarius entered that kingdom, and such was the terror his name inspired, that Theodatus, the reigning chief, at once offered to give it up, upon easy conditions. The Ostrogoths had more spirit than their king, and having caused him to be murdered, they elected Vitiges, a man who had already acquired considerable reputation for his military talents and daring valour. The first object of the newly-elected monarch was to lessen the number of his enemies. He tried to make peace with Belisarius, but could not effect it. He attempted the Austrasians, and succeeded; and by means of persuasion and large bribes, he concluded a treaty with the Franks. His army was greatly increased and improved, and

BOOK I.

Joins the Roman  
army under Belisarius:

A.D. 536.

BOOK I.  
—

Belisarius at last found that he had got no mean opponent to contend with. Still, under the guidance of so able a leader, the Roman arms were every where successful ; and Belisarius was on the point of completing the subjugation of Italy, when ambassadors arrived in his camp with orders to conclude a peace, and to allow Vitiges to retain the crown, if he would agree to pay an annual tribute to the emperor.

Vitiges and his Goths accepted of the terms with joy, but the Roman general refused to sign the treaty. This refusal, on the part of Belisarius, led to a supposition that he wished to obtain the crown of Italy for himself, and such reports did not fail to make an unfavourable impression upon Justinian, who recalled him immediately after the conquest of Ravenna, and sent him to take the command in Persia. Though he had made Vitiges a prisoner, and compelled the Ostrogoths to be governed by the officers of Justinian, the absence of the master-spirit of the army was soon discovered. Totila, who succeeded Vitiges, began to attack the Romans in detail, and having inspired confidence into his troops

by the success of his measures, and having engaged and beaten the army commanded by the lieutenant of the emperor in person, he recovered Naples, and in the following year laid siege to Rome. Justinian was now obliged to recal Belisarius, but he could not recal the wound that had been given to his feelings. He returned to Italy indeed, but not as he had formerly entered it; for now he found a beaten and dispirited army, which no effort of his could bring into order or discipline. Ravenna was captured, and Rome taken by assault in the very presence of the imperial legions.

BOOK I.

A.D. 560.

OLFIGANDUS was the favourite of Belisarius, and held a high command in the army of Justinian. Even when the success of Totila the Goth had recovered the greater part of Italy from the power of the Romans, Olfigandus, and the troops under his command, took Spoleto, and delivered it up to Belisarius. There is no certain information of the period of this prince's death, but ULIGAGUS his son accompanied Belisarius in his last campaigns in Persia, and was afterwards actively engaged in the defence of Italy against the invasion of the Lombards.

Held a high command in the army of Justinian:

Time of his death uncertain:

Is succeeded by his son Uligagus.

The Lombards, or as they are called in the

BOOK I.  
History of the Lombards:

Latin chronicles, the *Longobarbi*, were originally a people who dwelt between the Elbe and the Oder, but having retired beyond the Elbe as the invading Romans advanced, they were never subdued; and, amidst the powerful and turbulent nations of Germany, they retained their peculiar laws and customs, and were at all times able to defend their liberties.

In the reign of Theodosius, and about the year 487, they became the allies of Odoacer, king of Italy; in 526, they settled in Pannonia. Enemies of the Ostrogoths, they readily joined the army of Belisarius, and after the final extinction of the Gothic power in Italy by Narses, the successor of Belisarius, and lieutenant of Justin II., they returned to their own country, with accumulated wealth, and increasing power.

Narses, left in the government of Italy, had so managed the affairs of that country, that it had nearly recovered from the effects of the desolating war of more than twenty years. The people were beginning to enjoy the fruits of their industry, when becoming, in his turn, an object of jealousy to the courtiers of Justin, he was suspended and recalled. Not judg-

BOOK I.  

---

ing it prudent to encounter the snares which his enemies had laid for him at Constantinople, he retired from Rome to Naples, where he was greatly beloved. Here he determined to consult his friends on the measures he ought to adopt; but while brooding over the ingratitude of his sovereign, it was reported to him, that the empress had said publicly, that, notwithstanding his great name and haughty spirit, she would compel him to come and handle the distaff with her women. "Yes," said the angry soldier, "I will wind them a clew, which neither she nor the emperor shall be able to unravel." He knew the number and valour of the Lombards, who had been the chief support of his army in his last campaigns. Their king, Albuin, had been his companion in arms, and was still one of his best friends. In the state of wounded feelings, and insulted honour in which he found himself, he had recourse to this friend, and the Lombards were invited to march into Italy.

Albuin was not slow in making preparations for an expedition, which was as flattering to his own views as it was agreeable to the wishes of his people. His army was reinforced by recruits from all the German nations, and soon entered

They enter Italy.



**BOOK I.** Italy, by way of Istria and the Venetian territory, where there was not a single arm to oppose them. At the commencement of the spring of 569, he advanced upon Treviso, which opened its gates at his approach; Vicenza, Verona, and Tarentum followed the example of Treviso. His march was one of triumph, and as his troops treated the Italians with kindness and respect, the provinces submitted in succession; at Milan, he assumed the title of king of Italy, and Liguria taking the name of its conquerors, became the province of Lombardy.

Liguria becomes the province of Lombardy.

Though a part of Italy was thus easily subdued, Pavia and other places of importance still held out, and ULIGAGUS was one of those chiefs who remained firm in the cause of the emperor, and, with his Bavarians, kept possession of the cities intrusted to his care. Still the genius of the Lombard king was sufficient to have overcome all the difficulties opposed to his conquest of Italy, had not the revenge of his wife carried him off in the midst of his victorious career.

Tragical end of Albuin, king of the Lombards:

Rosamond, the queen of Albuin, was the daughter of Canimund, king of the Gepidae.

—Before the Lombard prince led her to the altar, he had destroyed her people in a bloody war, and killed her father in a personal conflict. He caused a cup to be made of the skull of the prince, and at a feast, given to his principal officers at Verona, he compelled his queen, the fair Rosamond, to drink her wine from her father's cranium. She left the feast, eager for vengeance, and the issue of this affair, so characteristic of the manners of the age, may be told in a few words: she applied to the king's herald at arms, promising him her hand, and the crown of Italy, if he would assist her in the destruction of Albuin. The herald promised to do whatever she might command him, but assured her, that success would depend upon her obtaining the support of Perides, the king's favourite, and privy councillor. Rosamond saw the difficulty of bringing the favourite and confidential friend of her husband to become his murderer; but what will a woman bent on revenge not accomplish? She ascertained that this favourite had an intrigue with one of the ladies of her court, and learning the hour that he was to visit this lady, during the night she took the place of her servant, and did not dis-

**BOOK I.** — cover herself, until he was perfectly satisfied that his own existence depended upon the death of his master. A few days after his savage feast, Albuin was assassinated, and Rosamond having secured the treasures of the king, fled with her daughter to Ravenna. Although she kept her promise in marrying the king's herald, it was revenge, and not love that had driven her to the act; she therefore determined to get rid of him also, and gave him a cup of poison to drink as he came out of the bath. The effect, however, was not so sudden as was expected; he became aware of what was intended, and seizing Rosamond, he compelled her to drink what remained in the cup, and in a few minutes they both expired.

And his queen Rosamond.

The Lombards overrun Italy.

The army soon elected a successor to Albuin, who continued to follow his footsteps in the subjugation of Italy, and it was with difficulty that Rome and Ravenna could maintain their independence. Towards the close of the sixth century, the affairs of the empire were in a most distracted state, and Rome was in imminent danger of falling into the hands of the Lombards. The emperor Maurice was compelled to have recourse to Childebert, king of Austra-

sia, for aid against these enemies, who under their king, Autharis, had become an established and powerful nation. The troops which Childebert sent to the assistance of the Greek emperor were commanded by Uligagus, as lieutenant of the young prince, who entered Italy in person at the head of his army. They recovered several places, and restored them to the emperor.

BOOK I.

The Franks enter  
Italy, under Uli-  
gagus.

Autharis, who was unable to oppose the overwhelming power of the Franks and Austrasians, waited patiently until their zeal began to relax, when, by presents, he found means to gain the friendship of Childebert; and pretending to place the Lombard kingdom under his protection, he prevailed upon him to repass the Alps with his army. This is the last time that a Guelphic prince carried arms in support of the Roman power. In the kingdom of Austrasia, a Prince of that family held, about this period, the duchy of Champagne, while they still retained their power and their influence as princes of the highest rank in the province of Bavaria; and though the two last princes which we have mentioned, in bringing down the line of descent from the first Guelph, did not reign as

## BOOK I.

---

sovereign princes in Bavaria, we must conclude that some one of their family reigned in that province, as, according to the ancient laws of the country, the Ruler (the words are, *Dux qui præest Populo*) must always be of the Guelphic family.

Bavarian princes  
more allied with  
Lombardy than  
France.

Bavaria, as a dutchy, was included in that division of Germany which then formed the kingdom of Austrasia; but Garibald, who was duke at this period of our history, was rather inclined to take part with the Lombards; and Autharis, the king of that nation, to secure his friendship, demanded the hand of his daughter the princess Theodolinda in marriage. This demand proved agreeable to the Bavarian duke, and was not objected to by the lady herself. She had formerly been promised to Childebert, the king of Austrasia, and when this monarch was made acquainted with the arrangement about to take place, he was greatly irritated against the duke of Bavaria. He caused a powerful army to enter his country, when Garibald, despatching his daughter into Italy under a safe escort, withdrew to his fastnesses in the mountains, and set the prowess of the king at defiance. Gunoald, the brother of Garibald,

## BOOK I.

who conducted the queen into Italy, remained in the service of the king of the Lombards, and was rewarded with the duchy of Este. CADUIN, the next prince of the Guelphic stem, was in high favour at the court of the king of Paris.

Caduin, son of Uligagus, in favour at the Court of France.

He was the son or grandson of Uligagus, and enjoyed the confidence of the queen Brumhilda, whose influence for a long time was paramount in the kingdoms of France. Being intrusted with the command of the Austrasian army, he subdued a great part of the kingdom of Burgundy, and these provinces were erected into a duchy, and conferred upon Caduin in the year 613.

A. D. 613.

In his latter years this prince was employed in collecting and digesting the laws of the Bavarian and other German nations dependant upon France, a duty which he performed with so much zeal and success, that it tended not a little to establish the dominion of that power throughout the neighbouring provinces. This charge was confided to him by Clothaire II., who had arrived at the height of his ambition, and was the acknowledged sovereign of Austrasia, Burgundy, and Neustria. The title which Caduin assumed was that of am-

Missus Regius of Clothaire II.

BOOK I.  

---

bassador of the king (*Missius Regius*), a title which was inherited by his son CATHICUS, or as he is otherwise styled in the chronicles of the time, Boniface.

On the death of Clothaire in 628, his two sons Dogabert and Charibert, according to the existing laws of France, ought to have divided his kingdoms between them; but the elder being a young man of some spirit and great ambition, seized upon the whole, and compelled his brother to remain content with a small portion of country between the river Charente and the Pyrenees, where he enjoyed the title of king, without the power of interfering with his brother's government.

Dogabert, under the guidance of Arnold and Pepin, two noblemen of Austrasia, who held the office of mayors of his palace, began his reign under the most favourable auspices. He made a tour through his several kingdoms, assisted personally in the administration of justice, and in reforming abuses; but he was not long in forsaking the virtues of his early years, and in abandoning himself to the most disgusting vices. He made himself detested by his subjects and despised by his neighbours. His

## BOOK I.

kingdom was invaded by the Sclavi, a race of savages from the north, and the Austrasians having demanded a king of their own who should reside in their country and superintend the government and the affairs of the kingdom.

Dogabert was thereupon obliged to carry his son Sigibert to Metz, where, with the consent of the princes, he was declared king of Austrasia.

*History of the French Empire, and its several kings.*

The Austrasians having now succeeded in their wishes, the war against the Sclavi was carried on with spirit and success, and they were driven back to their own country on the shores of the Baltic.

Dogabert died in 644, leaving two sons, Sigibert, king of Austrasia, and Clovis, who was declared king of Neustria and Burgundy. These princes were still in their infancy, Sigibert being only ten, and Clovis six years of age. Pepin, who had remained with Dogabert as his mayor of the palace, joined Sigibert at Metz, on that king's death.

The youth and imbecility of the royal race had allowed the mayors of the palace to rise, from being mere servants of the court, to the important rank of commanding in the kingdom.



BOOK I.  

---

They were appointed to their office by the grandees of the state, and not by the sovereign ; and after the death of Dogabert, they assumed the command of the armies, and the management of the finances, so that nothing was left to the descendants of Mœroveus, but the empty title of king.

Immediately on his return to Metz, Pepin of Landen assumed the office of mayor of the palace to the young king, but he did not long enjoy that office, as he died in 646.

Pepin of Landen  
dies, A.D. 646.

His son, Grimoald, made an attempt to succeed him, but the nobles were unwilling that such an office should become hereditary, and his pretensions were opposed by Otho, a prince of great authority in the kingdom of Austrasia. The suffrages of the nobles were divided between the contending parties ; a civil war ensued, in which Otho lost his life, and the son of Pepin succeeded without opposition. Finding the young king given up to the superstitions of the age, Grimoald, the new mayor, supplied him with funds to build churches and establish convents, while he managed as he pleased the affairs of the kingdom ; and as Sigibert had no children,

BOOK I.  
—

Grimoald further prevailed upon him to declare his own son Childebert his successor; but this had scarcely been done, when the queen was declared pregnant, and soon after safely delivered of a son, who was named Dogabert.

The testament in favour of Childebert was annulled, but Grimoald had so ingratiated himself with the weak king, that, at his death, he left the young prince under his protection, and continued to him the management of the public affairs.—Scarcely, however, had the king been buried, when the infant Dogabert was shut up in a convent, and afterwards carried over to Ireland, where it was intended he should be brought up in ignorance of his birth, and obliged to pass his life as a recluse in a monastery. —A report was spread that he was dead, and Childebert, the son of the infamous Grimoald, was proclaimed king of Austrasia. This usurpation was carried on with too much haste, and the nobles of the country becoming disgusted, they seized both the father and son, and sending them out of the country, gave the crown to Clovis, king of Neustria or Paris. We are left in doubt as to the time the exiled Dogabert remained in Ireland, but when it was ascertained

Grimoald intrigues  
for the crown.

Dogabert sent to  
Ireland :.

## BOOK I.

Returns to France.

Duke Cathicus of  
Guelph governs Al-  
sace.

that he was still alive, ambassadors were sent to the Archbishop of York, his protector. This prelate not only knew where the prince was to be found, but had supplied him with funds, and now made an effort to get him the assistance of an English army, to assist in recovering his kingdom, which, at the time of his being found, was held by one of his cousins, the son of Clovis. Iminchild his mother, who had escaped from the power of the mayor of the palace, and still lived in favour at her nephew's court, though desirous that her son should be restored to his crown, yet, knowing the effects of a civil war, prevailed upon them to settle the matter amicably. Childeric, the son of Clovis, remained king of Austrasia, while Dogabert was content with the province of Alsace, a country at this time under the government of Duke CATHICUS of Guelph.

During the reign of Childeric, Cathicus held the office of mayor of the palace, in his kingdoms of Neustria and Austrasia, but he being a passionate and cruel Prince, was not permitted to reign long. He was surprised and assassinated while engaged in the chase, by a noble Parisian, whom he had insulted in one of his fits

## BOOK I.

of anger. His death proved favourable to the cause of the legitimate heir, who being joined by the Guelph, was without difficulty placed on his father's throne, and unanimously acknowledged king of Austrasia, where Cathicus, or as the French writers call him, *Wulfoade*, was continued in his charge as mayor of the palace. After a peaceable reign of eight years, he fell with his master, who was also murdered while hunting in the forest of Vaivres.

Made mayor of the palace to Dogabert.

We are now arrived at that period, when the dynasty of the first race of the kings of the Franks, or of France, was drawing to a close. Having come to the throne while children, and often with weak intellects, they had seldom enjoyed more than the name of king, and were deposed or assassinated, as best suited the convenience of their subjects, or the irritated passions of their insulted servants. After the murder of Dogabert, the nobles of Austrasia resolved to have no longer a king, or mayor of the palace, but to intrust the chief power to one or two of their own number, who should take the title of princes. For this purpose they selected Augisilius, the son-in-law of Pepin of Landen, whose success being envied by

## BOOK I.

Augisilius, son-in-law of Pepin, made Prince of Austrasia, murdered.

His son, Pepin of Heristal, revenges his murder

Godwin, an orphan he had brought up and educated as his own child, was by him basely murdered. But Pepin, the son of Augisilius, having discovered the retreat of the assassin of his father, set out with a single servant, and having penetrated to the place where he lay concealed, killed him in the presence of his friends without their attempting to move in his defence.

Is made governor of Austrasia.

This brave avenger of his father's blood, Pepin de Heristal, had no sooner returned to Metz, than, though still a very young man, he was declared Prince of Austrasia. From this station he rose to be mayor of the palace, a title better understood in the kingdoms of Neustria and Burgundy, as well as Duke and Governor of Austrasia. Instructed by the fate of his ancestor Grimoald, who grasped at the title of king, and was thereby ruined, Pepin determined to enjoy the substance, while the shadow remained with the descendants of the royal race. Every act was done in the name of the king, who on certain days was allowed to appear in public, and had a guard and a suitable establishment, but whose power was in the hands of Pepin.

BOOK I.  
—

The empire of the Franks, from the imbecility of its several kings, and the frequent change of the mayors, or governing officers, was at this period in a very disordered state; but as soon as Pepin found his authority sufficiently settled, he commenced the work of reformation.

His first care was the arrangement of the finances, and his next the improving of his army, being satisfied, that with men and money at command, he could effect what other changes he pleased. With talents, far superior to his equals in the empire, he stood at the head of the government without a competitor. The country flourished under his management, and the princes of the surrounding nations of Europe sought his alliance. The emperor Justinian II.—the king of the Lombards—the chiefs of the Huns, the Sclavi, and the Saracens, sent ambassadors, to bargain for and secure his friendship.

Improves the state  
of the country :

Theirry the first king, under whom Pepin ruled, died; but it made no change. Clovis, his son, was announced as the third king of that name. Clovis, too, expired when only fourteen years of age; but he had a brother Childebert, whose name was equally good to stand at the

Enjoys his power  
under several nominal kings :

## BOOK I.

Dies, A.D. 714.

head of Pepin's acts, and who enjoyed that honour and a life of indolence for the space of seventeen years, when, at his death, Doga-bert, his son, succeeded. The days of Pepin of Heristal however, with all his talents, and all his power, were not to endure for ever, and on the 16th of December, A.D. 714, he breathed his last. He had governed the empire of France for twenty-seven years and a half, and left it in a state of great prosperity. In his domestic life Pepin was not so fortunate as in his public career. Of his two legitimate sons, one had died, and the other was murdered; and although he had his grandson, a child of six years old, named his successor as mayor of the palace, we should have known little even of Pepin and less of this grandson, had not Charles, an illegitimate son by the lady Al-paide, surpassed even his father Pepin in wisdom and valour.

The widow imprisons Charles, the natural son of Pepin :

Plectrude, the widow of Pepin, attempted to retain in her own hands the power which her husband had enjoyed. The unfortunate Charles was shut up in a prison, while with her little grandson she marched at the head of an army that had been collected for the invasion of

BOOK I.  

---

Neustria. The citizens of Paris, at all times indisposed to the government of women, were soon prepared to oppose force to force; they met the Austrasians near to Compeigne, and so completely routed them, that the young mayor and his grandmother with difficulty escaped. The Neustrians elected one of their own nobles to the office of mayor, who carrying Dogabert into Austrasia, soon destroyed the influence of the widow of Pepin, and afforded an opportunity to his illegitimate son Charles to escape from prison, who, having succeeded in establishing his rank as an Austrasian prince, raised an army to maintain his rights, and was soon called upon to defend the liberties of the kingdom, a second time invaded by the forces of Neustria. More fortunate than even his father had been, he was the conqueror in every battle that he fought, and in less than three years master of the three kingdoms which then constituted the empire of France. He, too, saw the propriety of maintaining a king while he exercised the sovereign power, and after a few months of what was called an interregnum, on the death of Clothaire, whom he had caused some time pre-

She is defeated by the Parisians.

Charles establishes his rank as a prince:

Becomes master of the kingdom, as mayor of the palace to Clothaire.



## BOOK I.

vious to be proclaimed king, he placed Theodorick, who reigned in Neustria, upon the vacant throne of Austrasia.

During the sway of Pepin of Heristal in France, the Dukes of Bavaria were more in alliance with the Lombards than with their natural sovereigns, and the princes of the House of Guelph had already acquired large possessions in Italy. Gunoald, a younger son of Garibald, Duke of Bavaria, we have already seen established as Duke of Este in the Lombard kingdom, where his sister reigned as queen, and on the failure of heirs male, by the death of Rodoald, grandson of Autharis, in 659, Aripert, the son of the Duke of Este, was called to the crown. This naturally gave the Bavarians an interest in Italy, and led them to frequent that court more than the court of France. The dukes of Bavaria supported by Lombardy, began to throw off the supreme power of the Austrasian monarch, and no longer thought it necessary, after their election, to ask his approbation as a sanction of the people's choice. The princes, too, of this House were so much engaged in the affairs of Lombardy, that they are seldom mentioned in the history of France.

The Guelphic Princes at this time more allied with Lombardy than France.

Aripert, one of these Princes, king of Lombardy, A.D. 659.

**GUELPH**, the son of Cathicus or Boniface, is only mentioned as being the friend of Bertarid, the son of Aripert, who, through the intrigues of his sister's husband, Grimoald, duke of Beneventum, was for a time deprived of the crown of Lombardy,

**BOOK I.**

*Guelph, son of Cathicus, the friend of Bertarid :*

When Aripert, the Guelphic King of Lombardy, died, he left the crown to his two sons, Bertarid and Godibert. Godibert was murdered by Grimoald, through the intrigues of Garibald, duke of Tarentum ; but Guelph, who adhered to Bertarid, fled with him to the court of the Huns. Grimoald, who caused himself to be proclaimed king, considering his power as sufficiently established, sent to invite his brother-in-law to return to Lombardy ; and the deposed king, being anxious to revisit the land of his nativity, despatched his friend Guelph to ascertain the intentions of the reigning sovereign. These being reported favourable, Bertarid made his appearance at the Lombard court, and renouncing all title or claim to the kingdom, continued to live in security for some time. There were many, however, who expressed unfeigned pleasure at the return of Bertarid ; while the courtiers of Gri-

*Accompanies him to the Court of Hungary :*

*Returns with him to Lombardy :*

BOOK I.  

---

Saves Bertarid from  
assassination :

And joins him in  
France :

Dies about 673 :

His son marries the  
heiress of Friuli :

moald, dissatisfied at his being allowed to remain amongst them, insinuated to the king that he could not be safe while his rival lived. A plan was laid to have him assassinated, which being discovered by Guelph, he found means to have Bertarid removed from Lombardy, and conveyed in safety to the court of France, where he remained till the death of Grimoald again opened his way to the crown of Italy. Grimoald, who was a man of humanity and penetration, soon discovered that he had been imposed upon in regard to the conduct of Bertarid, and not only rewarded Guelph for the part he had acted, but allowed him to join his friend at the court of Paris, where he arrived about the time that Grimoald, the son of the first Pepin, had caused his son to be chosen king of Austrasia. On the return of Bertarid to Lombardy in 673, there is reason to believe that Guelph accompanied him, and died there, leaving a son, whose name is not recorded in any of the chronicles ; but who having married the daughter of the duke of Friuli, was by Cunibert, the son and successor of his father's friend, invested with that duchy. This prince, who must have been coeval with Charles, the

BOOK I.

illegitimate son of Pepin, was the father of three sons, who growing up with the descendants of Charles, were more or less connected with the events which conducted them to the throne of France. These sons were Ado or Adelbert, who remained in Italy; Otkarius, who held large possessions in Burgundy; and Ruthard, or Rodoard, who enjoyed the family possessions in Bavaria. In the lifetime, therefore, of Charles, who, from his constantly using a particular instrument of war, was surnamed *Martel*, the intercourse of the Guelphic princes with the court of France was again established, and two of the sons of the Duke of Friuli, Otkarius and Ruthard, were educated with the children of Charles Martel.

*Their issue.*

*Two of the sons of Guelph educated at the court of Charles Martel.*

During a period of twenty-five years the government of France was entirely in the hands of Charles, and at his death in 741, he left his power to his two sons, Carloman and Pepin. Carloman, the elder, was intrusted with the government of Austrasia, Germany, and Thuringia; while Pepin, who was only in his seventeenth year, was made mayor of Neustria, Burgundy, and Provence. Whatever desire he may have felt personally to be addressed as

*Charles Martell dies A.D. 741.*

*Succeeded by his sons Carloman and Pepin.*

BOOK I.  

---

king, Charles Martel never made use of any other title than that of mayor of the palace. The history of his time is but little known; he was constantly at the head of a powerful army, and almost always successful in his military undertakings. Though no author has condescended to write his history, he was the promoter of learning and learned men, and indefatigable in his exertions to propagate the Christian faith. He brought missionaries from England and Scotland, and planted them among the barbarous nations of Germany, where their zeal and their example made many converts. Charles Martel left his sons by his first marriage in possession of his power; but they wanted his experience, and their brother and sister by the second marriage, being in some measure overlooked, their mother Sonichilda, a princess of Bavaria, was not of a spirit to submit to such an insult. She sent her daughter to the court of Bavaria, where she married Duke Odilon, a prince who had been kept in subjection by the arms of Charles Martel, and was now desirous, not only of establishing his independence, but of increasing his territory.

BOOK I.  

---

A civil war was the consequence of the settlement made by Charles, and the kingdoms of France remained in an unsettled state for several years. At last a prince of the blood royal, named Childeric, was seated on the throne of Neustria, where Pepin remained as mayor of his palace. Carloman governed Austrasia with the title of Sovereign Duke. Having assembled a general council, measures were taken by both princes to reform the abuses that existed in the German provinces, and to establish the Christian religion upon a sure basis, and freed from the heretical doctrines that already prevailed. Many wise regulations were adopted, though, from the circumstances of the times, few of them could be carried into effect. The most remarkable event during the sitting of this council, was the birth of Charles, the eldest son of Pepin, which took place at the castle of Ingelheim, near to Mentz.

Pepin mayor of the palace to Childeric.

Birth of Charlemagne.

The brothers Carloman and Pepin were very different in their dispositions; the one anxious to live in retirement and peace; the other delighting in war and bustle. Carloman, disgusted with the vices of the world, determined to retire from it, and having made a visit to

Carloman retires to a monastery.

## BOOK I.

Pepin regent of the  
United Kingdoms of  
France:

Rome, he received from the Pope the habit of a monk, and soon after entered the abbey of Mount Cassin. Pepin, who was rejoiced at this abdication of his brother, took the necessary steps to secure to himself the Government of Austrasia, and was soon in a condition to maintain his authority as regent of the whole empire. For a time he had to contend against a powerful faction aided by the Saxons, who wished to put his younger brother, Griffon, in possession of the power abdicated by his elder brother Carloman. Pepin pursued and conquered his enemies in every direction, and when his brother and his army were taken prisoners, he behaved to them with as much kindness as if they had never revolted. This conduct, so different from the usual feeling of the age, was successful in gaining him the hearts of the people, while his bravery and talents for command had already made him the idol of the army.

Aspires to become  
king.

As yet Pepin had kept up the farce of having a king in whose name he acted, but this the nation began to see was not even necessary; and that there might be no longer a pretext for keeping up a civil war in the kingdom, he resolved to assume that title

BOOK I.  
—

which could only be given by the free choice of the army and people, and to which neither his brother nor his brother's son could have either claim or pretension. While he continued with the rank of duke, and acted as mayor of the palace to a nominal king, his brother Griffon certainly had a claim to the same rank in Neustria, and Drogon, the son of Carloman, had equal claims in the state of Burgundy.

He knew how to lead the minds of the people, to view favourably the plan he had at heart; and in a general assembly of the states, held at Soissons, it was proposed, that Childeric should be *shaved*, and Pepin declared king. The unhappy Childeric had no friend : some authors assert, that he was a perfect idiot; others, that he feigned imbecility, that he might be less obnoxious to his ambitious mayor; but whether his imbecility was feigned or real, it is certain that there was not a dissenting voice among the whole assembly of bishops and nobles of France, when Childeric was condemned to a convent, and Pepin placed on his throne. The first use which he made of his royal power, was to reward the bishops, and in-

Childeric deposed,  
and Pepin elected to  
the crown.

His conduct after  
his election.



BOOK I.  

---

crease the revenues of the Catholic church; and his first act was to march with a large army to punish the Saxons, who had sent back his missionaries, and destroyed their churches.

The Saxons, in the eighth century, were a people who, under different chiefs, occupied that part of modern Europe, which extends from the German Ocean on the west to Bohemia on the east, and from the Baltic on the north to the river Main in the south. They were still strongly attached to their idol-gods and their ancient customs, and most adverse to the introduction of any new religion among them. Though divided into tribes, where each chief was supreme, still, in all times of danger or invasion, they selected one, to whom a power was given to command the whole of the Saxon people; but that power ceased, as soon as the war was at an end.

Unable to withstand the numerous army which Pepin on the present occasion had marched into their country, they submitted to his orders, and agreed to receive back his priests, and rebuild their churches, while he, availing himself of the leisure that this submission allowed, began to correct the most glaring abuses that had crept

into the country now under his sway, during the turbulent period that preceded his election to the crown. He called together a general assembly at Metz, where, in 751, he appeared for the first time with all the insignia of royalty, and having proposed a number of laws for regulating the police of the kingdom, and selected princes of high rank, and tried courage, for the office of governors in the several provinces, he sent them to their posts, with orders to see these laws carried into effect.

## BOOK I.

A general council held at Metz, 751.

RUTHARD or Rodoward of Guelph, and a Count Warin, were sent to command in Germany. Being less bigotted than their master, they saw with regret the revenues of the state swallowed up by the liberality of the king, to the church and her members; and one of their first acts, was to strip the Abbey of St. Gall of some of the rich domains it had acquired in the district, under their government. This abbey was still under the direction of Othmar, its original founder, who had pride as well as piety to support him, in defending the rights of his holy community. He complained loudly to the king of the conduct of his officers, and Pepin wrote to the two counts, commanding them

Ruthardus of Guelph sent as governor to Germany.

Treatment of Othmar, abbot of St. Gall.

BOOK I.  

---

to restore the property they had seized. But it was not difficult in those days to evade, in a distant government, the order of a king, not yet quite fixed on his throne ; at any rate, they shewed themselves little anxious to comply with his orders. Othmar therefore determined to proceed, and lay his complaint in person, at the foot of the throne ; and his intention being communicated to the governors, they had him seized and conveyed to prison, when, to give a colour to so violent a proceeding, they procured an infamous monk of his own order, to swear that the holy abbot had been guilty of a scandalous intrigue with a lady of rank. Even at this early period, it had been granted as a boon to the church, that the clergy should only be tried in their own courts, and in ordinary cases there was perhaps little chance of justice for the laity ; but the governors of Germany had committed themselves too far to draw back. They were determined to get rid of the troublesome abbot, and they found in the bishop of Constance a judge to their mind, who, upon the testimony of their suborned witness, condemned the old man to perpetual imprisonment. They shut him up in the castle of Both-

mar, where he was in danger of being starved to death; and though removed, through the kindness of a friendly noble, who undertook to be his keeper, he did not survive his iniquitous sentence more than a year.

BOOK I.

Death of St. Othmar.

In 730, when the doctrine of image-worship had made a fatal schism in the Christian church, the bishop of Rome and the Exarchate of Ravenna, throwing off the authority of the eastern empire, formed themselves into a species of republic, of which the bishop was declared the head, and who, about this time, assumed the title of Sovereign Pontiff. The king of Lombardy, Luiputrand, availing himself of these dissensions in the church, took possession of four cities within the Roman territory, and claiming the rights which the emperors before this revolt had over the capital, he summoned the Romans to acknowledge him as their king; and demanded from every subject a golden crown, as a capitation tax. Had Luiputrand been able to take the field with an army of any strength, Rome must have submitted, but he was not supported by a sufficient force; and the Pope, to gain time, began to negotiate, not only with his rival, but with the

Circumstances which led Pepin to march an army into Italy.

BOOK I.  

---

other powers in Europe. Pepin, who at an early period had seen the advantage to be gained by a cordial union with the head and members of the Catholic church, made many sacrifices to gain their support, and when appealed to by the bishop of Rome, entered warmly into his interests. His delight was in war, and he was aware, that if his barons could be brought to fight the battles of the church in Italy, there was little danger of their opposing the arrangements he found it necessary to make for the better government of the kingdom of France. The nobles of France, however, were not at all times disposed to shed their blood in a contest which gave them little concern; and it was not until the Pope had visited France in person, that Pepin was able to march such an army into Italy, as could ensure success to the party of the church.

During the greater part of his latter years, Pepin was mostly occupied in prosecuting this war in Italy, or in quelling an occasional revolt in some of his distant provinces. Bavaria, commanded by his nephew, duke Thassilon, gave him the most trouble. The last of his conquest, was the duchy of Aquitaine, which he

did not live to enjoy many days, as on the 24th of September, 768, he expired at St. Denis, in the fifty-fourth year of his age, and seventeenth of his reign. His sons, Carloman and Charles, had been declared his successors in 754, and had been anointed by Stephen, whose necessities, as we have seen, obliged him to wander into France, in search of more efficient aid than the nobles seemed disposed to grant him.

When on his death-bed, Pepin had the princes and nobles assembled, and made known to them his decision, in regard to the states which each prince was to enjoy. To Charles, his eldest son, he assigned the kingdom of Austrasia, and he gave Burgundy to Carloman, while Neustria and the newly-acquired duchy of Aquitaine were divided between them. The nobles of France were not satisfied with this arrangement, and in an assembly held immediately after his death, Neustria, Burgundy, Aquitaine, and Provence were given to Charles, while Austrasia, Thuringia, and Germany were given to Carloman; but the death of the latter, which took place three years after that of his father, left the succession open to his brother. Carloman, indeed left two sons, infants, to whose claims little at-

## BOOK I.

Pepin dies in  
A.D. 768.

His sons Carloman  
and Charles succeed  
him.

## BOOK I.

—  
 Carloman dies, and  
 Charles is declared  
 king of the united  
 kingdoms.

Otkarius of Guelph,  
 supports the son of  
 Carloman.

The party of the  
 young prince de-  
 feated.

tention was paid by the nobles of Austrasia, as they had no sooner deposited the royal corpse at Rheims, than they waited upon Charles at Corbier, and did homage to him as their king. There was, however, a party honest enough to adhere to the legitimate heirs of the late sovereign; and among them, the most distinguished was OTKARIUS of Guelph, who urged the widow to carry her children to a foreign court, where they could live in safety, and who immediately conducted them himself to the court of Lombardy.

Charles had already begun to shew those talents which speedily acquired for him the title of *Great*, a title he has retained in all countries, and in all languages; and amidst his turbulent and ignorant nobles, he found little difficulty in bringing even the most refractory to his side. In 771, he was solemnly crowned at Metz, and became the undisputed monarch of the united kingdoms of France.

## BOOK II.

CONTAINING SOME ACCOUNT OF THE ORIGIN AND  
PROGRESS OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE, UNDER  
CHARLEMAGNE AND HIS SUCCESSORS; WITH  
THE HISTORY OF THE GUELPHIC PRINCES.  
DURING THAT PERIOD.

At the commencement of the reign of Charlemagne, Constantine, surnamed Capronymus, still reigned at Constantinople, and possessed a few of the Asiatic provinces that had been recovered from the Moors. The followers of Mahomet were in possession of Persia, Syria, Egypt, the coasts of Africa, Spain, and part of France. Desiderius ruled in Lombardy, and Vitalianus as Pope at Rome. The German provinces were for the most part subject to France, or in alliance with that monarchy, but many of them denied that sovereignty which France claimed. The Bavarians were anxious to get freed from the oath of allegiance they had been compelled to take by Pepin; while the Saxons and Frisons grumbled most loudly at the annual tribute they had agreed to pay. Even in the heart of his own kingdoms, a spirit of rebellion and intrigue was constantly at

BOOK II.

A.D. 771.



## BOOK II.

State of Europe at  
the commencement  
of the reign of Char-  
lemagne.

work. The great officers of state had converted their temporary appointments into hereditary properties, and the ruling faction at the court of the last Merovingean kings had, previous to the rise of the father of Charlemagne, given but too much countenance to such usurpations. Even Pepin, who had, as he felt, usurped the crown, was obliged to shut his eyes to many abuses, which it now became the duty of his son to correct. Charlemagne had talents equal to the duties he had undertaken, and although arrived at manhood, and a king before he was able to sign his name, he acquired, during the turbulence of even the first years of his reign, a considerable degree of knowledge in every branch of polite literature.

Saxons revolt under  
Wittekind.

In 772 the whole of the Saxon nations refused any longer to pay tribute to France. They again murdered or dismissed the Christian missionaries, and under the government of Wittekind, one of the ancient dukes, and now their captain-general, they bade defiance to the arms of the young king; but though hampered by the Italian wars, which his father and brother had left him as a legacy, Charles

soon quelled the Saxon revolt, and obliged Wittekind to withdraw behind the Weser. BOOK II.

Wittekind was a warrior of no mean talents ; he had acquired a name among the nations of the north, and to establish the liberties of his country, and maintain the purity of their pagan idolatry, was the sole object of his ambition. Allied by marriage with the king of Denmark, that country afforded him an asylum in times of distress, and such was his influence, that the Saxons and their neighbours were ever ready to march at his command. Though often defeated, it required a period of thirty-three years of almost continued warfare, before he could be subdued. Character of Wittekind.

Charlemagne, in his Italian campaigns, was followed by victory in every step. In 774, he conquered Verona, and laid siege to Pavia ; and while his army was thus occupied, he paid a visit to Rome, and was received by Adrian, who filled the chair of St. Peter, with all the honours due to a conqueror. Following the policy of his father, he liberally rewarded the members of the church for any favour or friendship they were pleased to shew him. He therefore confirmed the grants of Pepin, Charlemagne in Italy, A.D. 774:

BOOK II.  
—

Conquers Lombardy:

Crowned king of that kingdom.

and augmented greatly the states he had given to the church; thus securing the cordial influence and support of those whose spiritual power was necessary to the establishment of his earthly kingdom. The surrender of Pavia, after his return from Rome, enabled him to send Desiderius to a convent, and with this king the Lombard dynasty was brought to an end. Charlemagne, however, did not allow the throne to remain vacant, or permit the Lombard kingdom to be suppressed. He caused himself to be crowned, with all the ceremonies customary in the legitimate succession; had the iron crown placed on his head by the archbishop of Milan; and promulgated a law, that all who succeeded him on the throne of Italy should be crowned in the same manner, and by the same priest. Though he removed the reigning prince, he did not interfere with the institutions of the kingdom, or the rights of the people. He continued the nobles in their official situations, while the government of the cities on the sea-coast and Alpine frontier was confided to strangers. The whole of these governors, whether Italians or foreigners, were put under the *surveillance* of inspectors, who

as the *Missi Regii* or *Dominici*, travelled from place to place, or resided in the distant provinces, and took cognizance of all that concerned the king's interests, or the people's welfare.

BOOK II.  
—

Italy, at this period, was subject to three powers—Charlemagne, as king of Lombardy, was master of Piedmont, the Duchies of Milan and Genoa, and a part of Mantua and Parma; the Greek emperors were still acknowledged in Paoli, Calabria, Luccania, and a part of Campagna; while the Pope possessed Beneventum, Urbino Ferrara, and Spoleto, with other minor states, the gift of Pepin and Charlemagne.

State of Italy at  
this time.

Every year saw the young king in the heart of Germany, where he no doubt received the forced homage of the Saxons and other nations; but his army was no sooner removed from their confines, than they were again in revolt, and year after year, we read in the history of Charlemagne, that his whole attention was directed to the final subjugation of the Saxon people, and the establishment of the christian religion in their country. He did at last succeed; Wittekind submitted to be converted and baptized, his followers did the same,

Saxons subdued and  
become Christians.

BOOK II.  
—

and with the cathedral churches of Paderborne, Minden, Osnaburg, Bremen, Verden, and others, the foundation of the christian religion was permanently laid in the north of Germany.

Though the Saxons were thus compelled, at the point of the sword, to submit to baptism and acknowledge Christ ; though death or christianity were the only alternatives allowed to them, still, when they did submit, they were treated with a very liberal policy. Wittekind, their leader, and who had latterly assumed the title of their king, was confirmed in his government

Wittekind first christian duke of Saxony.

as the first christian duke of Saxony. Monks were distributed throughout the country, to enlighten the minds of the new converts ; and although the towns were kept under strict military discipline, commerce was encouraged, and freedom of trade granted to Bardewick and Celle, upon principles which may be taken as the foundation of the commercial laws of modern Europe.

Court of Charlemagne.

Charlemagne, at whose court was to be found the most learned men from every country in Europe, was not only the friend of true religion, such as it was taught in his day, but the munificent patron of the arts and sciences,

BOOK II.  

---

and had evidently a real pleasure in withdrawing from his regal state, to gossip and dispute with his learned associates. As the whole learning of the period was confined to the members of the church, we may very naturally suppose that the great majority of the king's literary court was made up of priests or monks, and that however unbiassed his mind may have been, the church establishment was constantly pressed upon his attention.

In 780, when the father of three legitimate sons, he made a second journey to Rome, evidently with a view to get the sanction of the head of the church to the succession he had already destined for his children. His eldest son, Charles, he left at Worms to govern in his absence; his two youngest accompanied him to Italy; and the second, who had been named Carloman, was now baptized by the Pope, and named Pepin; while both were anointed by his holiness, the one as king of Lombardy, and the other as sovereign of Aquitaine. The disturbances in Saxony, and the intrigues of the dukes of Bavaria and Spolitto, who had married daughters of the de-

Charlemagne visits  
Rome a second time,  
A.D. 780.

BOOK II.  
—

posed king, and in their right claimed the crown of Lombardy, might have convinced him that these arrangements were subject to many contingencies. It is true that he had acquired by conquest, a right to dispose of his states as he pleased; at the same time, those who had lost them were ready to attempt a recovery. But the genius of the king of France, as it is well known, prevailed over all difficulties. The revolt of provinces only led to their overthrow; Bavaria's proud duke was saved from death by the clemency of Charlemagne, though *shaven* and *secluded* in the Abbey of St. Goar.

Suppression of the  
sovereign rank in  
Bavaria.

The sovereign rank became suppressed in the duchy, and, for a time, it was merged in the French Empire.

Charlemagne was not only the propagator of religion, the patron of the arts and sciences, and the protector of commerce, he was also the founder of modern chivalry in Europe, and his son Louis who was made a *knight* in the camp at Ratisbon in 793, when preparations were making for a war against the Huns, was the first who bore that title in christian Europe.

Louis, the son of  
Charlemagne, made  
a knight.

Though elevated far above all earthly princes,

BOOK II.  
—

magne was not free from vice, nor from care, within the bosom of his court and family. His own want of moral rectitude laid the foundation of his children's want of regard for him as their parent, or respect for him as their sovereign. Of the three sons who were born legitimate, two were provided for, by being made kings, while they were yet infants, but his eldest son, a bastard, and his second, who was legitimate, were left without any apanage—the one as unworthy of notice, the other as his heir in the kingdom of France. The first, indignant at the neglect he met with, did not hesitate to declare himself as nobly born as any of his brothers, and in him the discontented princes of the empire found a ready tool. A conspiracy was organized under his auspices, which had, for its object, the murder of the king and the three legitimate princes. The nobles who had engaged in this conspiracy were some of the most powerful in the kingdom, that had been harshly treated by Charlemagne, through the influence of his second, or as some write, his third queen, Faustrada, a proud and vindictive woman. Their secret was strictly kept, and on the point of being carried into effect,

The unhappiness of Charlemagne in his family.



**BOOK II.** when, by accident, some of the conspirators were overheard by a poor priest, whom chance had conducted to a church where they held their conferences, and who found means to make the sovereign acquainted with their measures. Charlemagne had his son Pepin arrested, the leaders of the conspiracy secured, instantly tried, condemned, and executed, while the poor prince whose life had also been forfeited, was *shaven*, and sent to spend the remainder of his days in a convent.

This miraculous escape from such imminent danger made a powerful impression upon the mind of the king. He redoubled his grants to the church, attended the services at the altar, where he assisted in person, by night and by day, and his devotion was such, that it inspired (says the chronicle), "the most profligate of his courtiers with some respect for the ordinances of religion." The profligacy of his daughters was a source of great uneasiness to the king, for though the chronicles have endeavoured to conceal the fact, it is well known that some of them lived the most abandoned lives. In his public capacity, Charlemagne met with no disaster; the pro-

BOOK II.  

---

vinces might occasionally revolt, and the Danes or Normans infest the shores of his kingdom, yet his arms were constantly victorious, and in the year 800, he arrived at the summit of all his ambition, being, on his third visit to Rome, solemnly crowned by Leo III. Emperor of the Romans, and declared sovereign of that Western Empire which included the greater part of Germany, and the whole of France and Italy.

It is time, however, that we should quit the subject of general history, and return to the annals of that family which is more immediately to engage our attention.

Adelbert of Guelph, who governed the duchy of Friuli, in the life-time of Charles Martel, left three sons, who, as we have stated, were ADELBERT, RUTHARD, and OTKARIUS. These princes adhered firmly to the party of Pepin, the son of Charles Martel, and when he was advanced to the throne of France, they were intrusted with the government of provinces, and continued to merit the confidence of the king. Adelbert remained in Italy, Ruthard was the Missus Regius or go-

*History of the Guelph family ; its princes :*

*Their connexion with Pepin and Charlemagne.*

BOOK II.      vernor in Germany, and Otkarius held large  
—      estates in Burgundy.

Soon after the death of Pepin, Adelbert and Otkarius retired from the world, and spent their latter years in a cloister. Of Ruthard, we only know that he was condemned to make atonement for the cruelty with which he had treated the abbot of St. Gall, and that he and his descendants, who inherited the Bavarian territories, were obliged to offer at the shrine of the Saint, a certain sum annually, and do penance, as a mark of their contrition for having persecuted St. Othmar.

When Charlemagne was crowned emperor, WOLFARD, or as his name is translated by the Latin chroniclers, *Bonifacius*, the son of Adelbert, was count or governor of Lucca in Italy, and GUELPH, the son of Ruthard, was resident at Altdorf in Bavaria, of which he is styled count, duke, or prince, indiscriminately. The government of Lucca was a charge which had been conferred on Boniface by Charlemagne, but Altdorf, Ravensberg, and other states in Bavaria, were the allodial possessions of the Guelphic family: the former, as

an officer of the emperor, was subject to such changes as war or revolt might produce; but the latter was not exposed to any such vicissitudes. We find the Count of Lucca mentioned as a principal or witness, in several charters and records of that time, while the name of the first Count of Altdorf is all that remains in the chronicle of his house.

BOOK II.  
—

Shortly after the accession of Charlemagne to the Western Empire, he lost his two sons, Charles and Pepin. The latter left a son, whose birth was illegitimate, but, through the affection of the emperor, he was constituted king of Italy, about the time that Boniface the First died at Lucca, leaving a son and successor, Boniface the Second, then a minor, under the government of his relation Ildebrand, whose rule continued till about 823. Charles, the eldest son of the emperor, left no issue; Louis, his youngest son, King of Aquitaine, therefore, became the heir of the Imperial crown. Louis was a prince of a mild and amiable disposition, and in the government of his petty kingdom, had given so many proofs of his sound judgment, that when the succession thus became open to him, Charlemagne is said to have re-

History of Charle-  
magne resumed.

**BOOK II.**      marked to his courtiers, that they ought, indeed, to rejoice that they were to have, in this young man, a sovereign even wiser than he was.

His son Louis declared his successor.

The emperor was now above seventy years of age, and as the cares of the empire were beginning to feel burdensome, he communicated, to the assembled nobles, his wish to have his son associated with him in the government. Louis was called to Aix la Chapelle, where the court resided, and after an unanimous vote of the prelates, abbots, dukes, and counts, assembled for that purpose, and after a suitable address from his father, he was commanded to take the crown from the altar, and place it on his head, thus manifesting, as is stated in the chronicle, that he held his power from God alone. After this coronation of Louis, the two emperors remained together, when Charlemagne spent several days, in giving his son advice in regard to his future conduct. Louis, however, being obliged to return to Aquitaine, took leave of his father, who continued to reside at Aix la Chapelle, occupied in disposing of the treasure he had amassed, and in making presents to the different churches he had established; and where, on the 28th

of January, 814, at nine o'clock in the morning, he breathed his last, in the seventy-second year of his age. He had reigned forty-seven years as King of France, and fourteen as emperor. Clothed in the imperial robes, and seated on a throne of pure gold, his sword girt on, and the holy gospels in his hand—the head adorned with a golden diadem, and the face covered with a mask of wax, the mortal remains of this prince were immediately consigned to the tomb which had been prepared for them, in the centre of the church he had built at Aix, where the sceptre and shield, which Leo the third had blessed at his coronation, were hung before his body in the tomb.

BOOK II.

---

 Death of Charlemagne, A.D. 814.

As soon as Louis was made acquainted with his father's decease, he left Aquitaine with a numerous suite, and proceeded to Aix la Chapelle, where, on his arrival, the assembled states of the empire unanimously did homage to him a second time, and acknowledged him as emperor. He caused his father's last will to be read, and instantly took measures to comply with it in every point. The treasures and the moveables of the palace were disposed of according to the wishes of the deceased sovereign,

The Emperor Louis arrives at Aix la Chapelle :

His conduct :

**BOOK II.** — and his sisters, and their numerous female companions, were sent to the convents which their father had pointed out, as their future residence.

The nobles were confirmed in the governments which they had held under Charlemagne ; and while the privileges which had been granted to the established religion were equally confirmed and enlarged, commissioners were sent into the several provinces of the empire, with orders to investigate into all existing abuses, and to report to a general assembly, ordered to meet at Aix la Chapelle, on the 1st of August, 814.

Commencement of  
his reign under  
favourable auspices :

Ambassadors were sent to congratulate Louis, from the east and from the west ; pagans and christians sought his alliance ; the contending factions in Denmark courted his support, and the Moors of Spain prayed for a prolongation of peace. It was therefore under the most happy auspices that Louis le Debonnaire succeeded to the throne of his father. Charlemagne had reigned so long, that the order of his government had become firmly established. The Saxons were effectually subdued, and the Bavarians contented with their lot ; and although

BOOK II.  
—

the Huns and the savage tribes of a more northern origin might occasionally ravage a neighbouring province, the empire may be said to have enjoyed a state of universal tranquillity. The first grand object that engaged the attention of the new emperor, after the minor details connected with his father's last will had been carried into effect, was the regulation and establishment of better laws for the government of the church. This was a subject peculiarly adapted to his devout and rather superstitious mind; but though his regulations were well calculated to advance the interests of true religion, and to correct the gross abuses that had crept into the church, they raised such a ferment among the bishops and prelates, whose licentiousness even at that early period was carried to a great height, that the life of the emperor was for some time in danger.

The affairs of the church engage his attention.

Louis, in conformity to his father's wishes, had married early in life, and when he succeeded to the crown he was the father of three sons, Lothaire, Pepin, and Louis, who were fast approaching to the state of manhood. Unable, or too indolent, to attend to the complicated affairs of so great an empire, he re-



**BOOK II.**      solved to make his two younger sons kings, whilst the eldest should sit with him on the imperial throne. Accordingly, in 817, Pepin was made King of Aquitaine ; Louis King of Bavaria ; and Lothaire declared emperor. But this division of power, instead of affording him that leisure which he had anticipated, or the relaxation that he expected, was the cause of all the miseries of his future life.

Becomes a widower  
in A.D. 818:

In 818 he lost his empress, Hermingarde, to whom he was fondly attached, and the state of melancholy which this event produced rendered him still more adverse to business. His courtiers began to be seriously alarmed lest he should abdicate the crown altogether, and retire to a cloister. To obviate this, his council was most urgent that he should again enter the married state, and to lead to such an event, the fairest of the daughters of the princes of the empire were brought to his court, where it was not long before the wit and beauty of

Selects Judith of  
Altdorf, for his second empress.

Judith of Altdorf attracted his attention, and gained his affections. In rank and loveliness the daughter of Guelph stood without a rival at the imperial court ; the choice of the emperor, therefore, gave satisfaction to

## BOOK II.

all parties except his own sons, who, aware of the great talents of their proposed step-mother, saw in her elevation an end to their uncontrolled influence with their father. The nuptials, however, were celebrated with great pomp, and Louis once more became a man of business, and took an active part in the affairs of the empire. The division of his states amongst his three sons was again confirmed and sworn to by the princes and nobles after his marriage; but Judith, who was a woman of a strong mind and great ambition, soon acquired so complete a power over her husband's actions, that the princes saw there was no security for the existing arrangements, if ever it should become necessary for her views to have them altered. When in the third year after her marriage she became the mother of a prince, it was no longer to be doubted that measures would be taken to secure for him a suitable provision by depriving his brothers of some part of their already-acquired inheritance. Lothaire, though conjoined with his father as emperor, had latterly been occupied in the government of Italy. When he learnt that Judith was about to become a

Conduct of his sons  
by his first marriage.

**BOOK II.** mother, he left Milan, and arrived at Frank-  
 fort, that he might be on the spot to watch  
 Judith delivered of a son, named Charles : events, and prevent his father from listening  
 to any advice that should be inimical to his or  
 his brothers' interests. Notwithstanding his  
 presence, the empress, from the moment that  
 her son Charles was born, did not cease to  
 urge Louis to make such a division of the em-  
 pire as should include the infant prince ; but  
 Louis, afraid to enter upon an affair that ap-  
 peared to him so encompassed with difficulties,  
 left the empress to manage the matter with  
 his sons as she best could.

Arrangements made  
 in favour of that  
 prince.

After some time, she prevailed on Lothaire  
 to consent that the emperor should provide  
 a kingdom for Charles by a fresh division of  
 the provinces of the empire. Lothaire was  
 perhaps induced to give his consent to such  
 a measure, from a chance of its never be-  
 coming necessary, and perhaps from a feeling  
 that before a babe newly born could arrive  
 at a period of life when he was capable of  
 acting as a rival, many circumstances would  
 occur to induce him to change or alter his  
 present views. In the mean time the empress,  
 satisfied with the success she had gained, al-

BOOK II.  
—

lowed Lothaire to do as he pleased in the government, and he departed for Italy, where the death of Paschal I. had thrown the conclave into confusion, and had produced serious disturbances in Rome. Before he left his father's court, he repented of the promise he had given to Judith, and began to take measures with his father-in-law, the Count of Alsace, to prevent any further division of the empire taking place. These measures for a time escaped the vigilance of the empress, who remained in security, from having obtained the consent and promise of Lothaire; and relying upon them, took every opportunity of supporting his interests and favouring his views. The Emperor had now dwindled into a silly devotee, whose time was spent in regulating the petty disputes among the clergy of his capital, or in chaunting masses with the priests of the cathedral. It is true that he frequently published wise laws, but they were seldom executed. A criminal might be brought to trial and condemned to death, but the emperor was sure to pardon him. Thus the empire became completely disorganized, and the princes and nobles began to despise a king who

*Intrigues of Lothaire, the eldest son of Louis.*

*Louis becomes a bigot.*

**BOOK II.**     could occupy himself with matters of such trifling importance, while the very existence of the empire was at stake. Another cause of discontent was the facility with which hypocrites and sycophants came to insinuate themselves into the good graces of the emperor, and to get appointed to the highest offices in the church. Any extraordinary shew of devotion was sufficient to secure a mitre, and the gift of prayer and singing psalms was with Louis a cloak to cover all other defects. That his sons and his officers might know how to govern with wisdom, he commanded Ebbon, Archbishop of Rheims (a man he had raised from being a slave), to select from the Holy Scriptures a code of laws by which in future they were to regulate their conduct in the kingdoms or provinces committed to their charge. Ebbon executed the commands of the emperor in a manner that gave satisfaction to the religious monarch, but incurred the ridicule of his sons and ministers, and tended not a little to alienate the affections of his subjects.

Every weakness on the part of the emperor, and every foolish act of his government, was laid hold of by his sons, who were anxious to

have him set aside altogether. The empress, from a wish to conciliate and to forward her views in regard to her own son, allowed the emperor to indulge in such follies for a time, and his sons to reap the advantage. But when she found that his wishes were opposed, when he declared his intention of giving Charles the German provinces, Rhoetia, and part of Burgundy as a kingdom, she then took upon herself a more decided part, and began to command where she had before solicited. A new division of the country was approved of in a general assembly, though the partisans of Lothaire and his brothers did not fail to raise their voices against such a violation of the oath they had so recently taken; and the princes themselves, finding intrigue no longer of use, prepared to carry their measures by open revolt. The empress, aware of the coming storm, had recourse to Bernard, Count of Barcelona, a prince of Aquitaine, already distinguished as a general in the field, and whose courage and talents were equal if not superior to those of any prince in the empire. He was recalled from Catalonia, where he commanded against the Moors, and made first minister and cham-

Judith begins to take an active part in the government.

Bernard, Count of Barcelona, becomes the favourite of the empress.

BOOK II.  
—

berlain of the king. As such, his authority was absolute, and a complete reform was made within the walls of the palace, where none but his friends were admitted.

The emperor, who only saw with the eyes of Judith, approved of every thing done by the minister, while she, trusting to his promise that he would raise her son to the empire, believed every measure right which could secure such an object. But the Count of Barcelona wanted discretion in many of his measures, and was too precipitate in all his plans. Though supported by Conrad and Rudolph of Guelph, the brothers of the empress, who partook of her influence in the court of Louis, discontent became universal. A report was industriously circulated that the emperor was held in thralldom by witchcraft, while the empress and Bernard lived in open adultery. Headed by the sons of his first marriage,

His measures produce rebellion.

the nobles rose in rebellion, and the weak sovereign was abandoned by his most attached subjects. Pepin, who commanded the army that had been raised against his father, took the field and advanced upon Orleans, when the court of Louis was thrown into the greatest

Lothaire and his brother in open war against their father.

consternation. His friends met, and advised that, as the hatred of the princes was more particularly directed against the empress and her minister, they should be removed from the seat of government. Accordingly Judith took refuge in the convent of St. Mary at Laon, and Bernard departed for the seat of his government in Catalonia, while the emperor, with the few troops that remained faithful to him, took up a position near Compeigne.

As soon as Pepin learnt the movements of his father, he marched to Verberie, within three leagues of Compeigne, when having secured the brothers of Judith, he sent a detachment to Laon to secure her also. They succeeded in their intentions, and the empress, afraid of being cut off by the rebellious subjects of her husband, before she could obtain an interview with him, prevailed upon Pepin to send her under an escort to Compeigne, with the view, as she pretended, of inducing the emperor to abdicate the throne and retire to a cloister. Far otherwise, however, were her intentions; and having obtained the interview she wished for, regardless of her own fate, she urged him to be firm in his exertions to reduce the rebellion, and on no ac-



**BOOK II.** count to think of giving up his crown. She made him swear never to become a monk, while at the same time she counselled him to be prudent in his measures, and to treat his misguided subjects with kindness, rather than cruelty.

Conduct of the empress.

On her return to the camp of her son-in-law, she was conveyed to Tortona, with the design of being compelled to take the veil, in the convent of St. Radegonde. A general assembly of the nation was called together, under the auspices of Pepin; but the arrival of his elder brother, Lothaire, put an end to Pepin's authority. Though satisfied with the revolt, he was displeased that he had not been elected the chief, and therefore assumed his rights, as the associate of his father, and the acknowledged emperor. He took his father under his protection, and treated him with kindness, while the relations and supporters of Bernard, Count of Barcelona, were either disgraced, or had their eyes torn out; and Conrad and Rudolph, the brothers of the empress, were sent to commence their novitiate in a monastery.

The great object of Lothaire's kindness, was to induce his father to abdicate. He had him surrounded with monks, who kept

## BOOK II

preaching to him the propriety of retiring from the world, and of dedicating the rest of his days to God. But among these holy fathers, there was one named Gombauld, who had other views than those of the young emperor, and who entering into a secret understanding with Louis, was the means of encouraging a counter revolution, and of raising him once more to undivided power. Louis the younger, and his brother Pepin, having become dissatisfied with the despotic conduct and haughty manner of their elder brother, were persuaded to enter into the views of the ambitious monk, who had already succeeded in bringing the feeble emperor to act with some spirit.

Gombauld the priest  
deceives the princes:

When supported by his sons the kings of Bavaria and Aquitaine, Louis demanded and obtained a general assembly of the states, and under the management of the monk Gombauld, a powerful impression was made in favour of the royal prisoner; so powerful indeed, that Lothaire saw there was a chance of being disinherited, unless he obtained his father's pardon. This he certainly obtained, but coupled with a condition, that his rebellious partisans should be abandoned to their fate.

Becomes the favourite of the empress and prime minister.

Lothaire compelled to sue for pardon.

BOOK II.  

---

Peace being now re-established in the empire, and the empress restored to her influence at court, a new arrangement was made in the division of the kingdoms, and several states were detached from the government of Lothaire, and added to Bavaria and the provinces, already given to the young prince Charles. The Count Bernard, whose bad government had been in a great measure the cause of the emperor's disgrace, found his way to Thionville, where the court then resided, and sought to justify his conduct; but his place, as prime-minister and confidant of the empress, had been obtained by Gombauld the monk, and finding there was little chance of his regaining either, he returned to his government on the confines of Spain, and entered into a correspondence with the King of Aquitaine, instigating him to take the field a second time, in open rebellion against his father, or rather against the measures of the empress, and her minister Gombauld.

The prince is again  
in rebellion.

This rebellion of Pepin was soon reduced, and Bernard removed from his government, but a spirit of discontent began to prevail universally. Judith was openly accused of having caused the emperor to violate all his promises,

BOOK II.  

---

and break his oaths, by making so many, and such frequent changes in the arrangement of his kingdoms, and by protecting Gombauld, whose ambition and want of knowledge had led to the utmost confusion in every department of the empire. Lothaire, who was constantly on the watch, began to levy troops in Italy ; and to strengthen his cause, he prevailed upon the Pope, Gregory IV., to accompany him into France, under the pretence of correcting the abuses that so glaringly existed, in every province of the empire.

The emperor on his part, supported by the clergy of Germany, collected an army to oppose his son's advance, but the Pope having contrived to get the ear of the pious monarch, prevailed upon him to deliver himself up to the protection of his sons, and to be guided by their advice, in the regulation of the affairs of the empire. Being separated from the empress, Louis was conveyed to the residence of his son Lothaire, while she, after a short confinement in the tent of the King of Bavaria, was sent once more to her prison at Tortona.

Louis a prisoner.

Judith confined at  
Tortona.

Had Lothaire behaved with common discretion, he might have continued to govern as he pleased ; but, at once, he caused his partisans to

**BOOK II.** declare openly that his father by his bad conduct had forfeited the crown, and ought therefore to be deposed. He had him, with the young prince Charles, shut up in a royal palace at Marleim in Alsace, where no one was allowed to see or converse with him, but monks, or persons in whom he could trust, while he permitted the affairs of the empire to be even worse conducted than they had previously been. This harshness, on the part of the unnatural son, created a re-action in favour of the

The nobles begin to pity Louis:

suffering father. The nobles began to murmur loudly, and the King of Bavaria, taking his father's side, collected a large army, with which he took the field. Lothaire, who evidently was as cowardly when opposed, as he was tyrannical when in power, retired with his partisans into Italy, and allowed his father once more to assume the reins of government.

Who is restored to his throne.

History of the Guelphic princes resumed.

During these times of anarchy and civil discord, the princes of the house of Guelph were firm in their attachment to the head of the empire. About 824, Guelph, Count of Altdorf, and father of the empress Judith, left his states to the government of his eldest son Edico, while Rudolph and Conrad, his younger sons, (whose

names have more than once been mentioned,) accompanied their sister to the court of France, and were provided for in that country.

Boniface the first, Count of Lucca, and cousin-german of Guelph, left his states, as we have seen, to his son Boniface the second, who, on his arrival at the age of manhood, acquired, through the influence of his cousin, the empress Judith, the marquisate of Tuscany, and was appointed protector of the sea-coasts of Italy, and of the Island of Corsica. Edico, the brother of the empress, does not make any figure in history. His name is not to be found in the general records of the period in which he lived, and is only traced in the annals of his house, as having died about 830, leaving a son, then an infant.

Boniface however, his kinsman and cotemporary, as soon as he was capable of commanding an army, was actively engaged in expelling the Saracens from the Mediterranean, where they had long carried on piratical excursions, and still continued to plunder and lay waste the towns and villages on the coast.

Boniface, second  
Count of Lucca:

Tired of acting on the defensive, this prince resolved to carry the war to their own shores, and having equipped a considerable fleet, he set sail

**BOOK II.** from Pisa, took pilots on board at Corsica, and  
 His expedition a- sailed direct for the coast of Africa. His troops  
 gainst the Saracens: landed between Carthage and Utica, where the  
 Aglabites, who governed as the viceroy of the  
 caliphs, astonished and provoked by this bold-  
 ness of the Christians, collected a numerous  
 force to chastise their insolence. The camp of  
 Boniface was surrounded by an immense host  
 of Arabs and Moors. It was assaulted several  
 times, and each time they were repulsed; and  
 at last being obliged to retreat, they were pur-  
 sued to a considerable distance, by the victo-  
 rious Christians, many of whom suffered from  
 their own rashness, in continuing the pursuit  
 for too long a time.

The Count of Lucca collected the remains of  
 his army, and having embarked his prisoners,  
 and the spoils of the Moorish camp, he return-  
 ed in triumph to his native city; here he learnt  
 the fate of his cousin and patron, the empress,  
 who, as has been stated, was a second time in  
 prison at Tortona. Without a moment's de-  
 lay, he ordered his troops to advance, and by  
 the quickness of his movements, and the cou-  
 rage of his followers, he soon restored her to  
 liberty, and conducting her across the Alps,

Flies to the assist-  
 ance of his cousin  
 the empress.

delivered her in safety to her feeble husband, once more in possession of his rights as emperor.

BOOK II.

---

Judith, on being restored to power, began, either from persuasion, or interest, to dissemble her hatred, and to court Lothaire, as the protector of her son; while Louis, becoming feeble in body, as well as in mind, was advised to call a general assembly of the empire, and to declare his intentions, with regard to the future division of his kingdom. The object of this manœuvre was to add to the portion destined for Charles. The arrangement proposed by the empress being approved of by the nobles, and sanctioned by Pepin, King of Aquitaine; her son, then in his fifteenth year, was invested with the ensigns of royalty, and in the following September crowned King of Neustria. The empress might have considered her cares at an end, had not the death of Pepin soon changed the face of affairs, and opened a more splendid career for her son, than could be expected in the petty kingdom of Neustria, with even its late appendages—the half of Germany. Pepin left two sons, but as they were infants, their pretensions gave her little con-

History of the empire renewed.

A.D. 837.



## BOOK II.

cern ; and having succeeded in gaining over to her views the King of Bavaria, the emperor was induced to make a fresh division, by which Charles gained Aquitaine or France, and the children of Pepin were disinherited.

This act of injustice, alarming even in those days, did not pass as a matter of course. A powerful faction was raised in favour of the young princes, and a civil war ensued; but in the midst of these troubles, the emperor became

**Louisdies A.D. 840 :** seriously indisposed, and on the 20th of June, 840, he departed from this life in the sixty-fourth year of his age, and twenty-seventh of his reign. Easy of access, he was constantly led away by the opinion of those about him, and the facility with which he was accustomed to pardon even the greatest criminals, though it secured for him the title of the Pious or Good, was the cause of most of the disorders of his reign.

The decease of Louis le Debonnaire left the Western Empire divided into three separate and independent kingdoms. Lothaire, the eldest son, continued to enjoy the imperial title, in right of his birth, and had the kingdom of Italy as his inheritance. Louis, King of Bavaria, governed the German provinces, and

**Division of the empire at his death.**

BOOK II.  

---

Charles, the only son of Judith of Altdorf, as King of Aquitaine, obtained possession of the sovereignty of France, to the exclusion of his nephews, the sons of Pepin. Lothaire, however, no sooner heard of his father's death, than he laid claim to the undivided empire, and although he had sworn to maintain the last settlement made by Louis, he collected an army, crossed the Alps, and attempted to force his brothers to acknowledge his supremacy. The union of the brothers defeated these intentions, and he was compelled to admit of their perfect independence ; but his restless and ambitious spirit kept the country in a state of civil war during the whole of his reign ; and when he died in 855, his states were sub-divided between his three sons. Louis, the eldest, had Italy, with the title of emperor ; Lothaire, the second, obtained that country which afterwards became known as the kingdom and province of Lorraine ; and Charles, his youngest son, got the kingdom of Provence. Thus the empire of Charlemagne was split into petty kingdoms, that each of his descendants might enjoy the rank of a sovereign.

Lothaire dies 855.

Louis, the son of the first Lothaire, was very

BOOK II. dissatisfied with the portion that had fallen to his share; and Louis of Bavaria, his uncle, availed himself of the unsettled state of affairs, at the commencement of a new reign, to get possession of several provinces, that he had contended for during the life-time of his elder brother. By the death of Charles, the youngest of the brothers, without heirs, in 866, the kingdom of Provence reverted to the emperor Louis, and his brother of Lorraine; but the death of the latter in 870, also without heirs, left that state to be contended for by his uncles and brother, when Charles succeeded in annexing it to the sovereignty of Aquitaine.

In consequence of a rupture between the emperor Louis, and the court of Constantinople, in 871, Lambert, Duke of Spoleto, headed a formidable revolt in Italy, and was by his partisans elected king; and the death of Louis in 874, without issue, leaving the imperial crown in abeyance, the King of Bavaria and Charles of Aquitaine both claimed it as their right. The party of the King of France proved the strongest, and favoured by the Pope, he marched a strong army into Italy, where, having secured the treasures

of his nephew, he was proclaimed and crowned emperor, as Charles the Second.

Thus did the son of Judith of Altdorf succeed to those honours, which his mother had so zealously endeavoured to secure for him. She did not, however, live to witness his elevation, having died at Tours in 843. But his uncles, Conrad and Rudolph, shared largely in the rising fortunes of their nephew. Rudolph who had become a priest, died without issue in 862, while holding the distinguished rank of count or governor of his nephew's palace, and Conrad, the son of Conrad, brother of Judith, was appointed by his cousin, count or governor of Paris.

Louis, King of Bavaria, was preparing to invade France, after the coronation of his brother as emperor, when he fell ill and died, in 876. He left three sons, among whom he had divided his German states, previous to his death. Carloman, the eldest, had Bavaria, Carinthia, and Pannonia. Louis, his second son, Franconia, Thuringia, Saxony, and Friesland, with a part of Lorraine; and Charles, his youngest son, got the country between the Maine and the Alps, with the remaining portion of Lorraine.

## BOOK II.

Charles of France, when relieved from the dread of his brother's power, not only assumed the title of emperor of all the kingdoms of the west, but endeavoured to maintain the authority which that title imported. The union of the sons of Louis, however, in supporting their independence, obliged him to remain satisfied with the title; and his death, in 877, left the imperial diadem to be seized by that prince who could bring the largest army into the field. The clergy and senate of Rome, on this occasion, were split into factions; one party being desirous that the King of Bavaria should succeed to the imperial crown; another wished Louis, surnamed the Stammerer, the only son of the deceased emperor; while a third supported the claims of Lambert, Duke of Spoleto.

History of the divisions in the empire and Italy.

The chief of the Bavarian faction was Adelbert, first Duke of Tuscany, the son and successor of Boniface the second, Count of Lucca, who joining the Duke of Spoleto, his brother-in-law, with a powerful army captured Rome, took the Pope prisoner, and compelled the magistrates to swear allegiance to Carloman. The treasures of the church were in danger of being plundered; the doors of St. Peter's were closed;

BOOK II,  
—

and the chronicle relates with horror, that the ordinances of religion were neglected for several days. But the Pope, having made his escape, fled into Germany, where he remained above twelve months, occupied chiefly in writing letters to the Kings of Lorraine and France, in which he characterizes the Duke of Tuscany, (the cause of all his disgrace,) as a robber and a murderer, and his wife, the Princess of Spoleto, as an adulteress. The sovereign power in Italy remained nominally with the King of Bavaria, or rather in the hands of Lambert and the Duke of Tuscany, but Carloman being in a bad state of health, and unable to manage the affairs of so great an empire, delivered up the government to his brother Louis, to the prejudice, as was conceived, of his illegitimate son, Arnold, who had been invested with the Duchy of Carenthia. Charles, the younger brother of Carloman, took offence at what he conceived an unjust partiality shewn to Louis, and entering into a league with his cousins of France, Louis and Carloman, the sons of Louis the Stammerer, they marched an army into Italy. The Pope supported the pretensions of Charles, and he was not opposed by the Mar-

Carloman of Bavaria resigns his government:

**BOOK II.**      quis of Tuscany. Italy was therefore subdued, and in 881 he was crowned emperor and king.

**Dies in 880.**      The King of Germany died in 880, when Louis his next brother, in terms of the settlement he had made, became Sovereign of Bavaria. He did not reign long, and having no issue, that crown also devolved upon Charles the Emperor.

Charles the Fat  
crowned emperor.

The kingdom of France, which, on the death of Louis the Stammerer in 879, had been divided between his two sons Louis and Carloman, was in 882, by the death of the elder prince, re-united under the government of the younger. Being vain and ambitious, he was easily persuaded by Hugh, Abbot of St. Denys, the bastard son of Lothaire, first King of Lorraine, to engage in a contest for the crown of Italy, with the Emperor Charles, who was still feebly opposed by Guido, the son and successor of Lambert, assisted by a body of Saracen troops, whose chief object was plunder, and by whom many provinces were laid waste. But the ambitious Carloman had little success in this Italian campaign, and dying in 884, the crown ought, of right, to have descended to his only brother, the issue of Louis the Stammerer, by a second marriage. The states of the

kingdom, however, decided otherwise, and having elected the emperor, Charles the Third was now in possession of the united empire, established by his great ancestor Charlemagne.

## BOOK II.

Succeeds to the crown of France.

During the divided and distracted state of the European continent, in the first half of the ninth century, the Normans, or Norsemen, originally a petty band of pirates in the North Seas, had risen into power, and like the Franks of former ages, had become formidable warriors, whose ravages were no longer confined to the sea-coast. In 885, they made their way up the Seine, and laid siege to Paris, setting the whole power of the empire at defiance. That capital, for a time, was in danger of being taken, and would have been destroyed, had it not been defended by a hero of more than ordinary talents, whose name was on this occasion first brought into notice, and who with a Spartan bravery, sacrificed his life, that he might save his country. This hero takes his place in history as ROBERT THE STRONG, and was a distinguished member of the Guelphic family, of whom we shall have to treat more at large hereafter.

Origin of the Normans.

They besiege Paris.

City saved by Robert the Strong.

In 886, Adelbert the First, Marquis of Tus-

Adelbert First, dies 886.



BOOK II.  

---

Emperor dies 888.

Arnold, Duke of Carinthia, succeeds to the German crown.

cany died, leaving his large estates and powerful influence in Italy, to his son Adelbert, who became the second prince of that name. In 888, Charles the Third, or the Fat, also died, at an island in the Rhine near Constance, and with him the direct legitimate line of the Carolingian emperors came to an end. For some time previous to his decease, he had been in a weak debilitated state, and the ambitious princes of the empire had not hesitated to speculate upon his demise, as an event that might lead to their obtaining a crown. Arnold, Duke of Carinthia, the illegitimate son of Carloman, King of Bavaria, being the prince whose talents were the most respectable, and whose influence had secured him a powerful party in Germany, was immediately called to the throne of that kingdom. There remained, indeed a legitimate prince, Charles, the son of Louis the Stammerer, King of France, who succeeded to his father's dominions, on the death of the emperor, and who, if hereditary succession had been allowed, ought to have received the imperial crown. But Arnold had little to dread from the claims of a child, whose weak mind obtained for him in after-life, the surname of the *Simple*,

## BOOK II.

and it is rather a remarkable circumstance, that in the short space of half a century, the legitimate issue of the great Charlemagne, which during that period had boasted of twelve kings, and eight sovereign princes, was now reduced to this idiot boy. He, therefore, with the support of the German princes, directed his whole attention to the kingdom of Italy, which was still rent by faction, and where the only point, in which the princes seemed to agree, was a determination to give the crown to one of their own number.

Melancholy end of the issue of Charlemagne.

Guido, Duke of Spoleto, and Berenger Duke of Friuli, were the princes that possessed the greatest number of suffrages, and when they learnt the death of Charles, they made an arrangement to divide the sovereignty, and to support each other against any German competitor. Berenger was to have the kingdom of Italy, and Guido that of Burgundy. But these were not the only princes who at this eventful period sought the kingly office. Louis, son of Boson, Count of Provence, claimed the privilege of reigning as king over the states of his father, while Rudolph, the son of Conrad, late Count of Paris, asserted his title

Candidates for royalty; their pretensions:

BOOK II.  

---

to the provinces of Burgundy, beyond the Juras, which, from the days of Pepin de Heristal, had descended to him from his great ancestors Adelbert and Otkarius of Guelph.

HUGH, actual Count of Paris, the son of Robert the Strong, and nephew of Rudolph, aspired to the throne of France, maintaining that the kingdom belonged to him by right of conquest. It was his father who had saved the capital, and his own efforts that had freed the nation from the thralldom of the Norman invaders. Every prince indeed who could raise or maintain a force of any description, was ambitious of possessing a kingdom. Respect for the blood of Charlemagne had hitherto kept these daring spirits in subjection; but now that the race was in some measure extinct, each found himself at liberty to act as he pleased. It is nevertheless curious to remark, that each of the candidates founded his pretensions to the regal office upon his connexion with or descent from the family of that great emperor.

And origin.

Berenger, Duke of Friuli, was by his mother a grandson of Louis le Debonnaire; Guido, Duke of Spoleto, was the son of the daughter of Pepin the Bastard, whom Charlemagne

BOOK II.  

---

made king of Italy ; Rudolph, of Guelph, was the grandson of Conrad, brother to the empress Judith, and Hugh, count of Paris, the son of Robert the Strong, a hero for whom subsequent genealogists have traced a descent from a sister of Charles Martel, but who, if the common sense and grammatical reading of an ancient record can be depended upon, was the son of a younger brother of Conrad the second, Count of Paris.

In the struggle that followed such a division of interests, the duke of Spoleto first gained the capital of Italy, and was crowned emperor by his party. The duke of Friuli took the title of king of Lombardy ; Rudolph of Guelph was crowned at St. Maurice, and became king of Arles or Burgundy beyond the Juras ; while the nobles of France gave the government of that kingdom to the count of Paris, and constituted him guardian of the young king, an infant as yet in his cradle. Arnold, of Bavaria, who had got the start of his rivals for rank, kept a watchful eye upon the changes that were thus produced. He made an attempt to dispossess Rudolph of his Burgundian kingdom, but failed, and at last found it for his

The new kingdoms  
established.

## BOOK II.

interest to continue on terms of friendship not only with that state, but also with France, and to give his countenance and support to the changes which he could not prevent.

In Italy the rival sovereigns becoming jealous of each other, Berenger began to intrigue with the king of Germany, and offered him his support in obtaining the imperial title, which he maintained had been unjustly usurped by Guido. But though the Dukes of Friuli and Spoleto had aimed at high sounding titles, the whole power of Italy was in the hands of Adelbert II. Marquis of Tuscany, a prince of unbounded wealth, but of a most treacherous and fickle disposition; and when the king of Germany, trusting to the promises of the duke of Friuli, marched an army into Italy, with the view of securing the crown of the empire, he found that Guido was supported by Adelbert, against whose forces it was in vain to contend. His army therefore re-crossed the Alps, and he was compelled to wait for a more favourable opportunity, which speedily occurred.

Arnold invades Italy,  
and is defeated:

In 894 Guido died, and the Pope, harassed by the factions of Lambert, his son and suc-

BOOK II.  

---

cessor, sent voluntarily to offer the crown to Arnold. He entered Italy a second time at the head of a powerful army of Germans, and not being opposed by the rich marquess of Tuscany, he reached Rome, where he was crowned emperor of the west in 896.

Crowned emperor,  
A.D. 896.

During the years of turbulence and civil discord which agitated the empire and Italy after the death of the son of Charlemagne, the Guelphic princes who remained in Bavaria, are scarcely mentioned in any historical record. They evidently took no part with the contending factions, and may be said to have lived in obscurity from the moment that they were deprived of the sovereign power in Bavaria by the decree of Charlemagne. Proud of their ancient and illustrious descent, they surveyed with contempt the royal upstarts around them, and though they ruled as patriarchs in their allodial domains, the offices of their court were filled by the first nobility of Germany. Their court may have been limited in splendour, but it equalled in respectability that of the proudest monarch who filled the imperial throne. Charlemagne stript this family of their rights of sovereignty, but he could not deprive them

History of the German Guelphs resumed.

BOOK II. of their ancient blood or royal ancestors, and in the secluded castles of Altdorf and Ravensberg, these were brooded over and acquired an importance far superior to the more modern notions of wealth and extended dominion, which had then become prevalent.

Edico, the eldest son of Guelph, and brother to the empress Judith, was succeeded by his son Guelph the II., who about 876 was succeeded at Altdorff by his son Edico II., whose daughter married the emperor Arnold. The only son of the second Edico was Henry, who being much at the court of his brother-in-law became his constant companion and friend. Mixing in the world, he had lost some of that respect for ancient independence which had been so long cherished by his ancestors. When Arnold proposed to grant him an extent of territory, upon condition that he should hold it of the empire and render service for the same, the young prince made no objection to the terms, and was only anxious how to outwit his friend and increase his domains.

Henry of the golden  
chariot, Duke of  
Upper Bavaria.

Henry was told that he should have as much land as he could surround with a chariot in the course of one day; and taking advantage

BOOK II.  

---

of the terms of the grant, he had a small chariot made of gold, and mounting the fleetest of his horses with this little carriage in his hand, he encompassed four thousand mansi in the time allowed him. His ingenuity was applauded and his grant confirmed ; but the acceptance of a grant or favour from any man by which that man would be acknowledged his superior, was an act too humiliating for the proud spirit of the veteran Edico. He refused to see the son who had so far degenerated from his high birth, and accompanied by twelve of his nobles, left the palace of his fathers, and spent the remainder of his days in a secluded part of the forest of Ammergau, where he caused thirteen cells to be built for their accommodation ; and to the last day of his existence he refused to see or to forgive his son. Henry felt it no degradation to accept the favours of his friend and emperor, and was created by him Duke of Upper Bavaria, when he accompanied him in his march to Rome.

His father's anger  
and seclusion.

Notwithstanding that Arnold had received the crown of Italy, and was acknowledged by a great majority of the Italian princes, the kingdom was kept in a state of civil war through



**BOOK II.** the intrigues of Agiltrude, the widow of Guido, a woman of great talents and ambition. Arnold therefore judged it necessary to have her secured, and with that view laid siege to Fermo, where she had taken refuge. While the siege was going on, this cunning princess found means to seduce one of the emperor's attendants, and had a cup of poison conveyed to him which he unfortunately swallowed. It did not prove fatal, though it greatly injured his constitution. He became incapable of exertion, and was obliged to retire into Germany, leaving Italy under the government of his illegitimate son Ratbold.

**State of Italy resumed.**

**Arnold poisoned:**

**Leaves Italy.**

Arnold had no sooner crossed the Alps, than Berenger appeared to make good his pretensions to the crown, and was supported by a considerable party in Lombardy. Other candidates had also started, and the most successful for a time was Lambert, the son of the deceased Duke of Spoleto. He not only overcame and murdered Manfred Duke of Milan, one of his opponents, but what was of more importance, he conquered and took prisoner the proud Marquis of Tuscany. Adelbert was the cousin-german of the young duke ; but in those days

**New candidates for the Crown of that kingdom.**

BOOK II.  

---

consanguinity was a slight bond of union: he had espoused the cause of Berenger, and was therefore an enemy to Lambert. Being informed that his cousin was engaged with a hunting party in a forest, near Placentia, he marched with a considerable force, in hopes of taking him prisoner.

The Tuscans, who knew that Lambert was without any troops, considered themselves secure of their object. They spent the night of their arrival in his neighbourhood, in drunkenness and riot, while the duke who had watched their movements, no sooner found that their intemperance had subsided into sleep, than he attacked them at the head of a hundred horse, and made the whole prisoners. The Marquis of Tuscany, unable either to fight or fly, was dragged from his hiding place, among the mules and asses of his baggage train, and his disgrace was imbibited by the rude pleasantry of his cousin, who is said to have taunted him with a prediction of his wife Berta, that he should either be a king or an ass.—“A king thou certainly art not,” said the victorious Lambert, “but thy second title I shall not dispute; and therefore thou hast wisely chosen a place of safety

Anecdote of Adelbert the Second, and his cousin Lambert.

## BOOK II.

among the animals of thy species." Had Lambert's life been spared, he certainly would have become the undisputed King of Italy; but Hugh, the son of Manfred, Duke of Milan, whom he had kept near his person, continued to nourish a spirit of revenge, and accompanying the duke in one of his hunting expeditions, he seized an opportunity when they were alone, and when Lambert overcome with fatigue had fallen asleep, and with the branch of a tree, felled him dead. When the followers came up, he asserted that his master had been killed by a fall from his horse. Berenger, on his rival's death, appeared at Pavia, and setting at liberty the Marquis of Tuscany, and other princes who had been confined by Lambert, his claim to the throne was acknowledged by all parties.

The Emperor Arnold dies 899.

The death of Arnold in the end of 899, or beginning of 900, added greatly to the confusion in Italy, and several new candidates started for the imperial title. Berenger, who enjoyed the title of king, had certainly a preferable claim; but Louis, King of Provence, supported by his mother Hermingarde, and Lambert of Spoleto, equally sup-

ported by his grandmother Agiltrude, were determined to assert their pretensions by force of arms. The first and great object with each of these princes was, to secure the Marquis of Tuscany, who, without aiming at the sovereign rank himself, still held the balance in his hands, and whatever party he supported was sure of success.

## BOOK II.

Berenger, Duke of Friuli, emperor.

The King of Germany had left one son, Louis, who succeeded him in Bavaria, and with whom his uncle, Henry of Altdorf, continued in favour, and from whom he received several large grants of land. But, though regarded by some as the fourth emperor of his name, he never was in Italy, and it does not appear that he ever aimed at a higher rank, than the sovereignty of his father's kingdom. In 912, he perished at the age of twenty, and being the last of the blood of Charlemagne, the crown of Germany, and the claim which it gave to the Western Empire, became open to any prince who could command a majority of votes among the bishops and nobles of the state.

Louis, the only son of Arnold, succeeds to the crown of Germany:

Dies 912, without heirs.

The contest was carried on in Italy with great animosity. Berenger is said to have bribed the

BOOK II. — highest, and consequently, being supported by the Marquis of Tuscany, was for a time successful. Hermingarde at last gained the ear of the Princess Berta, who having detached her husband from the interests of the Duke of Friuli, that prince was put aside, and Louis of Provence declared King of Italy. Louis, considering himself fixed on the throne, made a tour of the provinces, and on his arrival at Verona, was invited by the Marquis Adelbert to lodge at his palace. Astonished at the splendour of his table, and number of his attendants, the king remarked to the Princess Berta, that her husband lived more as a sovereign, than a simple marquis; a remark which gave so much offence to the lady, that the ruin of her guest was from that moment determined upon.

Contests in Italy.

The king was allowed to leave Verona in safety, but was speedily pursued by the vassals of Adelbert, who had again declared for Berenger. He was made a prisoner, and in conformity to the barbarous custom of the age, had his eyes put out. Berenger, being thus left without a rival, was proclaimed emperor, but

having little faith in the steady adherence of his friend the Marquis, he was no sooner crowned than, leaving Rome, he sought the alliance of the Huns, while Adelbert was allowed to direct the affairs of Italy as he pleased, till his death in 915.

BOOK II.

---

Death of Adelbert  
the Second, 915.

## BOOK III.

CONTAINING A SKETCH OF THE HISTORY OF THE  
WESTERN EMPIRE UNDER THE SAXON AND  
FRANCONIAN DYNASTIES, WITH THE HIS-  
TORY OF THE ANCESTORS OF THE  
HOUSE OF HANOVER DURING  
THAT PERIOD.

BOOK III. LOUIS, the only son of the Emperor Arnold,

Change in the im-  
perial dynasty.

Conrad I. king of  
Germany, A.D. 912.

being the last prince of the Carlovingian line, who had any thing like an hereditary claim to the crown of Germany, the princes and nobles of that kingdom, with the deputies from the free cities, determined at his death, to assert their right to elect his successor. The rank and merits of Otho, Duke of Saxony, were far superior to any other prince, and the diet unanimously fixed upon him, as best entitled to the sovereign power. They offered him the crown, but being of an advanced age, and without ambition, he declined the honour, and strongly recommended Conrad, Duke of Franconia, a prince who had always been esteemed the rival of the Saxon. Conrad was accordingly elected, and reigned as King of Germany for a period of

## BOOK III.

A.D. 919.

seven years, without taking any interest in the affairs of Italy. The Duchy of Bavaria was at this period held by Arnold, an illegitimate son of the emperor of that name, who was a candidate for the crown at the election of Conrad, and being disappointed, became a discontented and rebellious subject. Conrad died at Quedlingburg, on the confines of the Hartz, in 919, from the effects of a wound he had received in an action with the Duke of Bavaria, and, with his last breath, recommended that Henry, the son and successor of the Duke of Saxony, might be elected to the crown. The princes, bishops, and deputies of Germany, with the exception of Arnold of Bavaria, and Henry of Saxony, assembled at Frislar in the beginning of 920, to fix on the successor of Conrad, and when, after an unanimous vote, Henry was declared King of Germany, Everhard, the brother of Conrad, with others of the princes, were deputed to announce to him that event.

Henry, Duke of Saxony, king, A.D. 920:

On arriving at Goslar, where the Saxon held his court, they found him busily engaged in his favourite sport of bird-catching, and having saluted him as their elected sovereign, he is said, with great sincerity, to have recommended



BOOK III. — to them to return to the diet, and request that another might be chosen. Henry, however, was prevailed upon to become a king, though he refused at that moment to undergo the ceremony of coronation; while the ambitious Duke of Bavaria, a second time disappointed, appeared in open rebellion, at the head of a considerable force. Henry, who was prepared for such an event, advanced with his troops to meet the Bavarians, and the two armies were in line, and ready to engage, when the king appearing in front, demanded to speak with Arnold. The latter came forward, and Henry addressing him, in a loud voice, is said to have exclaimed, "What folly is this, to resist the will of the Almighty? Had they elected you to the crown, I should have obeyed you. Why, then, war against the Ruler of the Universe? the people who have placed me on the throne are but the ministers of his will. It is God alone who disposes of kingdoms.—He breaks, when it pleases Him, the sceptre of kings. He brings some to dishonour, and raiseth others in their place. He worketh these strange events, to convince the princes of this world, that their greatness alone

His address to the  
Duke of Bavaria:

comes from Him. What then is your object in taking up arms? Your rebellion can only tend to the ruin of your country, and the destruction of your fellow-creatures."

BOOK III.  
—

Arnold was subdued by this discourse, and upon some trifling privileges being granted to him, he became the friend of the king, and their friendship was further confirmed, by the union of the two families. Henry's daughter married the son of the Duke of Bavaria, and Judith the daughter of Arnold, became the wife of Henry, the second son of the king.

Henry of Saxony, to whom historians have given the surname of *the Fowler*, spent the last years of his reign in tranquillizing the provinces of the kingdom, and in organizing his government upon fixed and permanent principles. Many of the titles and governments, which had been granted by his predecessor as temporary appointments, were by him converted into hereditary possessions, to be held as fiefs of the crown, and the princes and nobles who obtained these grants became the feudal vassals of the sovereign. When he had completed his arrangements in Germany, he then turned his

Organizes the German kingdom.

**BOOK III.** eyes to Italy, which still continued in a state of anarchy and confusion.

**State of Italy, 936.** Guido, the eldest son of Adelbert of Tuscany, had succeeded to his father's wealth and his father's influence in the kingdom of Lombardy; but having married Marosia, a woman of infamous character, though of princely birth, and being guided in every measure by her capricious temper, he was even more fickle in his friendships than his father had been. Berenger had retained for some years the title of emperor and king, with the nominal government of the country. But Berta, the widow of the deceased marquis, having prevailed upon her two sons, Guido and Lambert, to support the interests of Rudolph, the son and successor of Rudolph, first Guelphic King of Burgundy, that prince was called into Italy, and declared its sovereign.

Rudolph II. called into that kingdom:

As long as the princes of Tuscany continued faithful to Rudolph, he was able to maintain his place; and as King of Italy, he governed that country for a term of three years, during the life-time of Berenger. But when Berenger was murdered, and Hugh, Count of Provence, the

BOOK III.  

---

son of Berta, Dowager Marchioness of Tuscany, by a former marriage, started for the crown, the Tuscan princes joined his cause. Rudolph was therefore compelled to cross the Alps, and Hugh having entered Italy, was proclaimed king. On his arrival, the newly-elected monarch was lavish of his gratitude to his half-brothers, through whose influence he had secured the crown; but when the death of their mother had dissolved the union between the two families, and ambition moved the king to despise his relations, he became their most inveterate enemy.

Succeeded by Hugh  
of Provence.

Marosia, the wife of Guido, Marquis of Tuscany, was the daughter of Theodora, a Roman lady, celebrated for her beauty and her crimes, and who, by her intrigues and her gallantry, had governed Rome for a series of years. Marosia, equally abandoned, was not less ambitious of reigning. Before she married the Marquis of Tuscany, she had been the mistress of a pope, (Sergius III.), and the wife of a senator of Rome. Her influence within the city was therefore paramount.

Character and conduct of Marosia:

The Marquis Guido, who was a mild and amiable man, did not long survive his union

BOOK III. with this ambitious and unprincipled woman.

A.D. 931. He died soon after Hugh's arrival in Italy, and leaving no issue, was succeeded by his brother

A second time a widow:

Lambert. Marosia, a second time a widow, though no longer young, was still beautiful; the government of the capital was in her hands, and Hugh being desirous of possessing that government, was informed it could only be obtained by making her a queen. She had been the wife, and was the widow of his brother, but that was a matter of little consequence, to a woman who had placed her own bastard in the chair of St. Peter\*. The statutes of the church were against such an union, and the prejudices of the world most decidedly so. But as he still wished to retain his popularity, a report was spread by Hugh, that Guido and Lambert, who had been reared and acknowledged as the sons of Adelbert, Marquis of Tuscany, and the Princess, Berta, were not the children of either; but that Berta, ashamed of her barrenness, had adopted them, and imposed them upon her husband.

In thus asserting that Guido was not his

\* Pope John the Eleventh was the bastard son of Marosia.

BOOK III.  
—

brother, he removed the difficulty as to his marriage with Marosia, while he prevented the succession of Lambert to his father's states, and this incestuous marriage, which immediately took place, was no sooner consummated, than he sequestered the Tuscan estates, and gave them to his brother Boson.

She marries Hugh,  
King of Italy.

Lambert, of Tuscany, could not remain quiet under such false accusations, or such infamous treatment. He challenged the king to single combat, and his challenge being accepted, his innocence was proved by an easy victory; but the king, though vanquished in the person of his champion, had chains and troops at command. Lambert was cast into prison and had his eyes put out, while the nobles of Italy of that day sanctioned by their acquiescence all these acts of cruelty, oppression, and incest. Lambert languished in prison for several years, and is the last prince of the direct male line of the first Guelphic Counts of Lucca.

Lambert of Tuscany  
imprisoned.

Hugh, who had given Tuscany to his brother, afterwards bestowed it upon his bastard son Hubert, in whose family it remained for several generations.

Marosia had a son by her first marriage

BOOK III. (Alberic, Marquess of Ivree,) who enjoying his father's rank as a senator of Rome, had ac-

Alberic, the son of Marosia, causes a revolt in Rome.

Hugh obliged to fly, and Henry, King of Germany, advances towards Italy :

quired an influence in the city even greater than that of his mother. After her marriage feast with Hugh, this son was prevailed upon to hold the basin for his royal father-in-law to wash, but doing it badly, the king gave him a box on the ear. This indignity the young prince would not submit to. He sought the senators of Rome, and upbraiding them with their indolence and cowardice, called upon them, as they regarded the honour of the blood they had derived from their ancestors, to resist the tyranny of a Burgundian, who had only acquired his power by an incestuous marriage. The citizens took up arms, and Hugh was obliged to leave the capital, while Marosia and her bastard son the Pope were shut up in prison. The states of Italy were about to recal Rudolph of Burgundy, but Hugh found means to make him his friend ; and it was then that they had recourse to the king of Germany, who accepting their invitation, caused a considerable army to advance upon Italy, of which he took the command in person ; but on the march being seized with apoplexy, which ended in paralysis, he was

obliged to return to Germany, where he died, on the 12th of July, 936.

## BOOK III.

And dies 936.

During the reign of Conrad I., Henry of Guelph, surnamed of the Golden Chariot, continued to enjoy the sovereignty of Altdorf and the feudal government of Upper Bavaria. He had married Hatta, the sister of Arnold, its sovereign duke, and was joined with him in his various rebellions against that emperor. After the election of Henry the Fowler, he still adhered to the party of the Duke of Bavaria; but when the union of the two families put an end to that civil war, Henry became the firmest ally of the Saxon dynasty. He died between the years 920 and 925, leaving his states to his son Rudolph. Previous to his death, he visited the retired spot where his angry father had spent his latter days, and which he had not ventured to do during that prince's life-time. Moved by the sight of the miserable condition of those faithful companions of his father's retirement that still survived, he determined to reward their fidelity, and as there was no inducement to build them a monastery in that wilderness, he had them removed to Altmunster, where

Continuation of the history of the Guelphs of Altdorf.

Henry of the Golden Chariot:



## BOOK III.

A.D. 920.

Succeeded by Rudolph, A.D. 925.

Otho I. succeeds to the crown of Germany, 936 :

they had every comfort that his power or his wealth could procure for them. He commenced building a convent at Altdorf in honour of his father's memory, to which that fraternity, which had become a fixed religious establishment, was afterwards transferred, and the nuns which his wife had placed at Altdorf, were sent to Altmunster. Rudolph, who succeeded his father about 925, continued faithful to Henry, and at his death, he attended at Aix-la-Chapelle, when the Saxons and people of Germany were assembled to proclaim Otho the eldest son of the king as his successor.

Otho, with his father's kingdom, inherited also his father's talents, and had no sooner settled his affairs in the north, than he hastened to follow up the plan which had been laid by Henry for obtaining the crown of Italy. By the assistance which he sent to Berenger, son of the Marquis of Ivree, that prince was able to force Hugh into a convent. But having murdered Lothaire, the son and successor of Hugh, Berenger's own ambition became too apparent ; Otho therefore withdrew his support, and determined to accede to

the urgent intreaties of the nobles of Italy, who had besought him to come and receive the crown.

BOOK III.  
—

Arnold, Duke of Bavaria, died about 937, and his three sons entered into a treaty to divide his states, and form a republic independent of the empire. This measure compelled Otho to deprive them of the government altogether, and he gave it to Bertolph, their father's brother. Henry, a brother of Otho had been made Duke of Brunswick, but on the death of Bertolph without heirs 945, he was at his mother's request promoted to Bavaria.

In Italy Berenger had caused himself to be proclaimed king on the death of Lothaire, 949, and was crowned, together with his son Adelbert. He further attempted to secure the widow of Lothaire for that son, but Adelaide, who was the daughter of Rudolph II. and sister to Conrad the reigning king of Burgundy, was a Guelph both in feeling and spirit. She rejected with horror the advances that were made by her husband's murderer, and to ensure her safety, shut herself up in the fortress of Pavia; she was pursued by Berenger, who having taken the fortress, sent her a prisoner to the Castle of Garda,

State of Italy at the commencement of his reign.

The persecution of Adelaide of Guelph, widow of Lothaire

BOOK III. situated in the middle of the lake of that name.

From that prison the address of a worthy priest effected her escape; and attended by a female servant, and this faithful friend, she concealed herself in the woods for several days. At last she reached the fortress of Cannossa, from which she despatched a messenger to Otho, offering him her hand and her interest in Italy, if he would come and deliver her from the power of Berenger. Otho, who was unable to leave Germany at that moment, sent his son Ludolph with a considerable force to relieve the princess; but from the intrigues of his uncle, Henry, Duke of Bavaria, who felt disappointed at not being intrusted with the command of that army, he was badly received by the Italians, they refused to admit his troops into their towns, or to furnish them with supplies, and obliged him to retrace his steps.

Otho, having greatly augmented his army, advanced with it in person, and being favourably received at Verona, despatched a faithful messenger, to advise the princess of his approach. This officer was unable to enter Cannossa, which was blockaded by Berenger, but

he conveyed his intelligence by means of an arrow shot into the city. The rapid advance of Otho obliged Berenger to raise the siege, and Adelaide, released from her captivity, immediately bestowed her hand on her deliverer.

BOOK III.

And is released by Otho, whom she marries, A.D. 951.

The nuptials were celebrated with great pomp, while the German army laid siege to Pavia; and that city having surrendered during the continuance of the festivities, the king and queen entered it in triumph. While Otho remained at Pavia, he received an embassy from the Pope inviting him to Rome; but being unwilling to trust himself within the walls of a city which was still governed by the Marquis of Ivree, he declined the invitation; and after keeping his Christmas at Pavia, gave the command of the army to Conrad of Lorraine, his son-in-law, and set out with his young queen for Germany.

Conrad conducted the war with so much energy and prudence, that he soon forced Berenger and his son to lay down their arms and intercede for pardon. They were sent prisoners to the court of Otho, and being deprived of the duchies of Friuli and Verona, which

Berenger and his son made prisoners.

BOOK III. — were given to Henry, Duke of Bavaria, they were permitted to retain their other possessions and to return to Italy.

History of the  
Guelphs of Lucca  
resumed.

Adelbert III:

The Marquis Lambert, whom Hugh of Provence, the tyrant of Italy, mutilated, imprisoned, and deprived of the states of Tuscany, was, as we have stated, the last of the direct male line of Boniface, first Count of Lucca. But when Otho of Germany marched into Italy, we find him accompanied by Adelbert, the undoubted successor of Lambert, and who, though esteemed the third marquis of that name in the family of the Guelphs of Lucca, was now styled Marquis of Liguria. The son of Hugh still held the Marquisate of Tuscany, which Otho confirmed to his heirs; Liguria, therefore, became the title of the Family of Lucca.

His origin:

There being no positive proof that Guido, the elder brother of Lambert, left issue by Marosia, or any other princess, and it being certain that Lambert left none, the origin of this Adelbert III. has consequently been a matter of much research and conjecture among the Italian and German antiquaries. It was at last discovered that Adelbert I., who married Rotilda, the daughter of Guido, duke of

BOOK III.  
—

Spoletto, had, besides the son who succeeded him as Adelbert II., another son, named Boniface, who supported the interests of Berenger, in 889, against his uncle Guido, and was the friend of the emperor Arnold. Adelbert III. must therefore have been the son of this prince. He was well advanced in years when he succeeded to his cousins Guido and Lambert, and must have died about the period that Otho conquered Pavia. The son and successor of Adelbert III. was Otbert, sometimes called Albert or Adelbert, who joining Berenger after his father's death, was styled the well-beloved and trusty friend of that prince. But when the desolation produced in Italy by the continuance of the civil war between Berenger and his opponents, again compelled the Pope and his friends to have recourse to the king of Germany, and he was invited to march an army into Italy sufficient to ensure tranquillity, and to accept of the imperial crown, as also the iron crown of Lombardy, which his holiness was ready to place on his head; Otbert, Marquis of Liguria, was one of the deputies who conveyed this invitation, and who remained at the German court, until Otho with his

Otbert, his son and successor about, 940:

Sent to invite Otho into Italy, A.D. 960:

## BOOK III.

Made Count Palatine, 961.

army was prepared to comply with their wishes. During that period he had risen into such favour, that Otho no sooner gained the crown of Lombardy, which he received at Milan in the end of 961, than he bestowed upon Othbert large grants of territory ; and when, in the February following, they reached Rome, and Otho was crowned emperor, Othbert further received the distinguished office of Count of the Sacred Palace.

He held this office for twelve years ; and as in his official capacity he represented the judicial character of the emperor, and pronounced finally in all civil and criminal appeals, he resided chiefly in his castle of Lomello, in the city of Pavia.

Intrigues of Pope John XII.

The emperor had scarcely left the capital of Italy after his coronation, when it was discovered that the Pope (John XII.) had commenced a negotiation with Adelbert or Alberic, the son of Berenger, who was still at the head of a powerful faction, and had promised to restore him to the crown. Otho returned suddenly to Rome ; and having ascertained the treasonable practices of his Holiness, he removed him at once from the chair of St. Peter, and

caused Leo VIII. to take his place. These prompt measures on the part of Otho were considered by the priesthood as trenching too far upon the authority of the church, and they raised a tumult which kept Rome in a state of revolt for some time. John, the deposed Pope, called together his cardinals and priests, and in a general council of the church, Leo was deposed; but being detected in a scandalous intrigue, he was soon thereafter murdered and his creatures dispersed. Still the churchmen wished to oppose the measures of the emperor, but Otho would not yield. He maintained he had a right to nominate the pontiff, and he compelled the conclave to go through the form of electing his friend Leo a second time.

John murdered, and  
Leo VIII. re-elected.

As soon as this business was arranged, Otho left Rome, to carry on the siege of Camerin, where Adelbert had shut himself up; but when on his march he learnt that he had made his escape, and taken refuge in the island of Corsica, he considered him as unworthy of further pursuit. In 965 he left Italy and returned to the north, attended by his eldest son Otho, who had already been crowned King of Germany,



## BOOK III.

and in 967, when his father was again in Italy, was also crowned emperor by John XIII.

In 970, the young Otho married Theophania, the daughter of Nicephorus, emperor of the Greeks, and with her received a formal renunciation of all claims to the sovereignty of Italy on the part of the eastern empire. Otho attended his son's nuptials at Rome, and returned immediately to Quedlingburg, where he occupied himself in consolidating his government, and in receiving the ambassadors of the princes of Christendom, who had been sent to congratulate him on the many splendid victories he had obtained during his reign. In 973, he gave up the go-

The Emperor gives up the government.

vernment of the empire to his son, and retired to Mersburg, where he passed the feast of the Ascension:—afterwards to Meinleben, where the air was considered purer; but on the evening after his arrival there, he had an apoplectic fit, of which he died on the 7th of May, 973. When his body had been committed to the tomb, his son was proclaimed in the church of Magdeburg as Otho II.

Dies 973.

Otbert I., Marquis of Liguria, died a few months after the emperor, leaving a son, who succeeded him as Otbert II., and who was continued in the office of Count Palatine by the young emperor, and invested, not only with the original states of his family, but also with a large tract of country that had been acquired by his father, and which, by way of distinction, are called in the charter of investment the *Terræ Otbertengæ*.

## BOOK III.

Otbert I., Marquis  
of Liguria, dies.—  
Otbert II. succeeds.

The succession of the young emperor was opposed by his cousin, Henry, Duke of Bavaria, who, in league with the King of Denmark and a few princes of Germany, assumed the title of king, and caused himself to be crowned by the Bishop of Frisingen. Otho tried to suppress this rebellion by means of ambassadors, but finding that Henry would not listen to his remonstrances, he marched an army into Bavaria, ravaged Bohemia, and obliged the rebellious princes to sue for pardon. Henry was deprived of the duchy, which was given to Otho, Duke of Suabia, the son of the emperor's brother, Rudolph; and having fled to his friend the King of Bohemia, he was pursued, taken prisoner, and sent to Qued-

Henry, Duke of Bavaria, deposed and confined.

BOOK III.     lingburg, and ,from thence exiled to Utrecht.  
—

Rebel princes murdered by Otho II. at Rome.

Otho II. dies 983.

In 981, Otho II. marched a powerful army to Rome, where he understood a serious revolt was meditated against his authority. He concealed his knowledge of the treason, and invited the conspirators to a splendid feast, but in the midst of their gaiety had them dragged from the table and murdered in his presence. This horrid act so disgusted the Romans, that next year when he led them against the Greeks and Saracens, who had invaded Calabria, they deserted his standard in the day of battle, and his more faithful Germans, being unable to resist the force of their enemies, were beaten, and Otho only escaped being taken prisoner, by assuming the garb of a peasant, and having a perfect knowledge of the Greek language. This prince's reign was only of ten years' duration, and at his death, in 983, he was succeeded, almost as a matter of course, by his eldest son Otho, who was the third emperor of that name, and who being a minor, was left by the emperor under the guardianship of his mother Theophania.

Henry, the exiled Duke of Bavaria, no sooner

## BOOK III.

heard of the second Otho's death, than he left the fortress of Maestrecht, where he had been confined. His object was to obtain the crown, but he began by asserting his right to the guardianship of the young emperor, as his nearest male relation. His pretensions were supported by a number of princes to whom the haughtiness of the empress had given offence, and at last he succeeded in getting the emperor into his power. But Theophania being supported by the troops of Saxony and Thuringia and protected by Conrad, King of Burgundy, and Henry, finding the fidelity of the Germans could not be shaken, entered into a treaty, restored the monarch to his legal guardian, and did homage for the duchy of Bavaria, which was now restored to him. Otho was crowned at Rome by Gregory V. in 996, and died in 1002, in the 29th year of his age, and with him the direct male line of the Saxon emperors ended. The Marquis of Liguria continued in favour with Otho III., and during the whole of his reign remained in the important office of justice-general of Italy.

The Duke of Bavaria attempts the Crown.

Obliged to yield to Otho III.

Otho III. dies 1002:

Marquis of Liguria continues in favour.

Henry of Bavaria, the great grandson of Henry the Fowler, was the prince whose here-  
 succeeds.

## BOOK III.

Italians elect Arduin,  
Marquis of Ivée:

Who is supported by  
the Guelphic princes.

Henry succeeds, and  
pardons the Guelphs:

ditary claim secured the influence of the German electors. But the Italians were desirous of freeing themselves from the German yoke, and made choice of Arduin, Marquis of Ivée, whom they proclaimed King of Lombardy. The Marquis of Liguria, who was advanced in years, was the leader of this party; he had served the Saxon emperors with fidelity, but his daughter had married the Marquis Arduin, and his interests were opposed to those of the King of Germany. He was not able to make any great exertion himself, but he had four valiant sons, Azo, HUGH, ADELBERT, and GUIDO, who warmly supported the cause of their brother-in-law, against the party of Henry II.

The war between these rival sovereigns was carried on with varied success till 1005, when Henry having made his way to Pavia, was crowned by his party, and Arduin's army being vanquished, the veteran Otbert, with his four sons and a grandson, were taken prisoners, and had their estates confiscated. They at last made their submission to Henry, were taken into favour, and had their properties and dignities restored to them. In 1014, they accompanied Henry to Rome, where he was crowned em-

## BOOK III

peror, but from some rash expressions which had given offence to the proud spirit of the Guelphs, we find them at the head of a party of their countrymen, which had resolved to exterminate the whole German army. For this rebellion, they were again imprisoned, and many of the estates of the family confiscated and given to the church. Othbert II. died this year.

Henry the emperor was cut off in 1024. Having no issue of his own, he had, previous to his death, strongly recommended Conrad, Duke of Franconia, to the notice of the princes of the empire; but his recommendation, though it had considerable weight, did not prevent others from starting for the crown at his death. There were at this time two Conrads, both dukes of Franconia, and equally distinguished for their merit. They were near relations, and may be said to have had nearly equal pretensions to the empire. After some delay, Conrad the senior, and the person recommended by Henry, was duly elected. His first care, on coming to the throne of Germany, was to secure the kingdom of Burgundy, of which the reversion had been granted to his predecessor by Rudolph III., who likewise had no heirs of his body. In-

Henry II. dies.

The Duke of Franconia elected emperor.

**BOOK III.** — dependent of that grant, Conrad claimed this kingdom in right of his wife, who was the niece of Rudolph, and when the Guelphic dynasty ended with that prince, who died in 1032, his states were finally incorporated with the empire.

Conduct of the Italians.

Italy again refused to acknowledge the German king, but having no prince of their own, of sufficient influence to aim at the crown, they sent to offer it to Robert, King of France, the son of Hugo Capet. Robert refused their offer, and they then had recourse to William, Duke of Aquitaine, who tempted by so brilliant a prospect, made preparations to support the faction which had made him the tender of their allegiance.

Conrad crowned at Rome :

Supported by Azo I.

Conrad II. entered Italy in 1026, and next year was carried to Rome in triumph, where he was crowned by John XX. A serious tumult, as usual, followed his coronation, which was suppressed by Azo, or Adelbert, the eldest son of Othbert the Second. This prince had married Valdrada, the daughter and heiress of Laudianus, Doge or Duke of Venice, and with her had received a great increase of wealth. She was the niece of Hugh, the descendant of Hubert, Marquis of Tuscany, and brought back

to the family many of their ancient possessions. BOOK III.  
 Azo continued firmly attached to the interests  
 of the emperor, and proved his strongest sup-  
 port against the party of his young rival.

Conrad II. died in 1039, leaving his son  
 and successor, Henry III., so overwhelmed with Henry III. succeeds  
 his father as emper-  
 or:  
 a war in Hungary and Bohemia, that he had  
 little time to attend to the affairs of Italy.  
 That country was therefore left for several  
 years under the government of its own princes,  
 who acting more as public robbers than legal  
 governors, had nearly reduced the kingdom to  
 a desert. But in 1046, Henry advanced upon Conducts his army  
 into Italy.  
 Milan, with a force sufficient to ensure success,  
 and having received the iron crown, and re-  
 duced the several provinces to order and sub-  
 jection, he was crowned emperor in the follow-  
 ing year.

Azo, the eldest son of Othbert, is the first of History of the Guel-  
 phic princes.  
 the Guelphic princes, who took the title of Mar-  
 quis of Este. He must have died about the  
 time that Henry III. was preparing to march  
 into Italy, as, in 1045, we find his son and  
 successor Azo II., in possession of the title  
 and territory of Este; and governing the cities  
 of Milan and Genoa, as the lieutenant of the



**BOOK III.** — emperor. Azo II. was esteemed one of the richest princes in the empire. But before we proceed further in the history of Europe, or in the annals of this branch of the Guelphic family, we must return to the branch of Altdorf, which still continued to flourish in Germany.

**A.D. 936.** The last prince that we have mentioned, **History of the House of Altdorf:** was Rudolph, the son of Henry of the Golden Chariot, who was present at the election of Otho I. The chief residence of this prince was at his castles of Altdorf and Ravensberg in Suabia, in the neighbourhood of the lake of Constance; but his power extended from the mountains of the Tyrol to the plains of Alsace, and several of the free communities of the Grisons were then his vassals. The cathedral churches of Frisingen, Augsburgh, Constance, and Coire, had been endowed, by the devotion of his ancestors, with liberal grants of land and peasants; and the monasteries of Altmunter and Altdorf had been founded by the munificence of his father. He had one brother, Conrad, who entered the church, and who after having governed the See of Constance, for a period of forty years, was canonized by Innocent the Second.

**Extent of their dominions.**

Rudolph I. died in 940, and was succeeded by his son Guelph, who lived till 980, and then was succeeded by his son, Rudolph II. This prince married the grand-daughter of Otho I., and was brother-in-law to Henry II. As a Christian prince, he was employed in a war against the Pagan Obotrites, who then dwelt in the Marquisate of Brandenburg. It is said, that he was put in nomination for the crown of Germany, at the death of Otho III., but his party was too weak to contend with that of his brother-in-law, the Duke of Bavaria.

BOOK III.

—  
Rudolph I. dies 940.  
Guelph III. 980.

By the Princess Itha of Saxony, he left at his death two sons. The eldest, who succeeded him, was HENRY, a young man of great spirit and haughty demeanour, who conceiving it derogatory to his high rank, to give tribute to the Abbey of St. Gall, or bend his knee at the shrine of St. Othmar, refused to pay the fine imposed upon his great ancestor Rurthard, or undergo that penance which had been awarded against his family. For such impious conduct, we are gravely told, that he was suddenly punished by the judgment of heaven. Being engaged in hunting the roe upon the mountains of the Tyrol, on the eve of the feast

Rudolph II. dies 995.

## BOOK III.

Melancholy fate of  
Henry, the son of  
Rudolph II.

of St. Othmar, and overcome with the fatigues of the chase, he lay down to rest himself under the shadow of a rock, when a part of it becoming detached, fell upon his head and killed him on the spot.

The Monks of St. Gall did not fail to make the most of this unlucky accident, which was so much in accordance with the superstition of the age. They succeeded in bringing back his brother and successor to a true feeling of his dependance upon their favour and friendship, and the tribute and penance were ever afterwards duly rendered.

Succeeded by his  
brother, Guelph IV.:

Guelph, the fourth of his name as Count of Altdorf, succeeded his elder brother, Henry, in 1014. He lived in great favour with the emperor Henry II., accompanied him to Rome, when he was crowned, and was one of those who, after his death, supported his recommendation in favour of Conrad, Duke of Franconia. He is represented as rich in possessions, and powerful in arms.

Rebels against the  
emperor Conrad II.:

After Conrad's election, he was prevailed upon, when the emperor was absent in Italy, to join his rival, the younger duke, and was employed by him, in a war against the city

BOOK III.  

---

and bishopric of Augsburg. He took and plundered that city and also the territory of Frisingen ; but when this rebellion was suppressed, on the emperor's return, Guelph was not only compelled to send back the plunder he had taken, but to evade the effects of the emperor's displeasure, obliged to fly into Italy, and take refuge at the court of his kinsman, the Marquis of Este. When he had arrived at a good old age, and began to reflect on the injuries he had done to the states of the church, he sincerely repented, says the monk of Weingarten, and that his sins might be pardoned, he bestowed several cities upon the cathedrals of Augsburg and Frisingen, whose territories he had formerly plundered. His castle of Altdorf he gave to the monks of Altmunster, and endowed their abbey with a princely revenue. He died in 1030, after having bestowed his daughter Cuniza or Cunigunda, together with a large tract of country in the fertile vale of Elisina in Lombardy, extending to eleven thousand mansi of land, on his friend and protector Azo the Second. Guelph, his only son, succeeded to the Bavarian territories, and having attached himself firmly to the interests of Henry

Obliged to fly into Italy.

Guelph V. succeeds in 1030.

**BOOK III.**     **III.**, the son and successor of Conrad of Franconia, was one of his principal captains, during the war in Hungary and Bohemia, and for his services in these campaigns, received the Duchy of Carinthia and Marquisate of Verona, which gave him the command of the whole of the Tyrol, and the important passes in the Rhoetian Alps.

Made Duke of Carinthia:

Greedy of wealth, he is said to have levied such heavy taxes from the citizens of Verona, that they were induced to complain to the emperor. Henry caused the matter to be investigated in his presence, and finding the complaints of the Veronese too well founded, he ordered the duke to return to the citizens the

Obliged to refund the taxes levied at Verona:

money of which they had been so illegally plundered. This act, notwithstanding its justice, gave great offence to Guelph, and although he accompanied Henry a second time to Hungary, in 1050, he joined the deposed Duke of Bavaria, when that prince erected the standard of rebellion against his lawful sovereign in 1054. But the death of the Bavarian rebel allowing the princes, who had been misled by his representations, to make their peace with the emperor, the Duke of Carinthia

Rebels against Henry III.:

died very soon after his pardon had been pronounced. **BOOK III.**

Dies without issue,  
1055.

As he left no issue, the succession naturally devolved upon the son of the only sister, the wife of the Marquis of Este; but the monks of Weingarten had surrounded his death-bed, and prevailed upon him to make a will in their favour, and the allodial states of Altdorf and Ravensberg were claimed by that community after his decease. Imiza, his mother, however, was still alive, and no sooner heard of this claim, than she despatched a messenger into Italy, to demand the presence of the heir of the Guelphs, and on his arrival, the will of his uncle was annulled. The son of Cunigunda was received by the Bavarian vassals as the true and legitimate heir of the Guelphic family, in right of his father, but more particularly, as his mother was the legal heir of the deceased prince.

Succeeded by his nephew, Guelph, only son of his sister Cunigunda.

We have now brought down the history of the two principal stems of the Guelphic house to the important period of their reunion, and before we proceed in our future details, it may not be improper to revert for a moment to its collateral branches.

History of the collateral branches of the Guelphs of Altdorf.

The younger sons of the first Guelph of Alt-

BOOK III.  
—

dorf, Conrad and Rudolph, we have already remarked, accompanied their sister Judith to the court of her husband, Louis le Debonnaire, where their ambitious spirit maintained their hereditary rank, and where they shared the happy, as well as the adverse fortunes of that sister. When Judith was surprised and confined by her unnatural step-sons, her brothers were shaven as priests; but even in this degraded state, they claimed and obtained permission to stand beside the throne, as priests of the blood-royal.

Conrad had two sons: Conrad, who succeeded him; and Hugh, from his church preferment, styled THE ABBOT. He had also a third son, whose legitimate birth has not been perfectly ascertained, but whose character stands conspicuous in history as ROBERT THE STRONG\*.

Origin of the kings  
of Arles, or Burgun-  
dy Transjuram.

Conrad II. succeeded his father in the dignity of Count of Paris, and recovered the estates of his grand-uncle Otkarius, in the province of Burgundy. He left an only son Rudolph, who assumed the royal crown, at the Abbey of St. Maurice, in 888, and whose independence being

\* See proofs, in the Notes and Illustrations.

BOOK III.  
—

confirmed by two victories over Arnold, the emperor, was at last acknowledged, in a general diet of the German empire. His son, Rudolph II., succeeded to this new-formed state, which included the French or western part of Switzerland, French Comptè, Savoy, Dauphine, Provence, and the country between the Rhine and the Alps, and was known as the kingdom of Arles or Burgundy. He twice attempted the conquest of Italy, and for a period of three years, governed in that kingdom. His son and successor, Conrad III., reigned upwards of fifty-six years, from 937 to 993, and enjoyed the friendship and support of the Saxon emperors. Otho I., we have seen, married his sister Adelaide, and she was the mother of Otho II., and the grandmother of Otho III. Conrad was succeeded by his son Rudolph III., surnamed the *Lazy*, who dying in 1032 without issue, the sovereignty of the kingdom of Arles devolved as a fief or legacy to his nephew Conrad of Swabia, who, as has been already related, was elected emperor in 1024. With Rudolph, this branch became extinct in the male line.

Extent of that kingdom.

Succession of the kings.

This branch becomes extinct 1032.

In the foregoing pages, we have traced the



**BOOK III.** History of the descendants of Judith of Altdorf,

—  
Descendants of Ju-  
dith of Altdorf, kings  
of France.

to the commencement of the reign of her great grandson, Charles the Simple.

The nobles of France, afraid that a foreign prince might be forced upon them, selected Odo, Count of Paris, as most worthy of their confidence, and declared him king during the minority of the infant Charles. This induced the relations of that unfortunate prince (to preserve his life, by many considered in danger) to have him conveyed over to England. In his fourteenth year, he was brought back to France, and crowned at Rheims, but the government of the kingdom was divided between him and Odo. The latter died in 898, which made little difference in the affairs of the legitimate prince. He was allowed to remain at the head of the government, but the power was in the hands of his factious nobles. At last his partiality for a favourite priest drove them into open rebellion, and in 923, Robert, the brother of Odo, was proclaimed king, and Charles made a prisoner.

A.D. 892.

Odo, Count of Paris,  
joined with him as  
king.

Robert, the brother  
of Odo, king.

Louis, surnamed  
*Transmarinus*, suc-  
ceeded his father:

He died in confinement in 929, when Louis surnamed *Transmarinus*, his only son, after a struggle of some years, succeeded, in 936, in obtaining the crown, and continued to

hold it till 954. He was succeeded by his eldest son Lothaire, who was nominally king till 986, when the title devolved upon his son Louis V., who died in the following year.

BOOK III.

This prince was the last of the family of Charles the Bald, and of the issue of the empress Judith.

This branch extinct with Louis V.

Odo and Robert, the sons of Robert the Strong, Counts and Dukes of Paris, were both honoured by their countrymen with the title of king, and ruled during a part of their lives over a portion of the kingdom of France. Hugh, surnamed the Great and Wise, the son and successor of Robert as Count of Paris, was not less powerful than his father had been, though he did not aspire to the regal title. He married Latwig, the daughter of Henry the Fowler, King of Germany, and by her left Hugo Capet, who on the death of Louis V. succeeded to the crown by election in 987, and whose posterity continues still to reign.

Illegitimate branch of the Guelphs, counts of Paris.

Hugo Capet, king of France.

As we are not writing the History of France, it only remains to be mentioned that Hugo Capet, the first king of the existing dynasty, was succeeded by his son Robert, surnamed the Holy, and that Robert's son, Henry I., was

His descendants still reign in that kingdom.

**BOOK III.** king when Azo II. became the head of the  
 — Guelphic family.

History of Azo, mar-  
 quis of Este, re-  
 sumed.

At the early age of seventeen, Azo II. marquis of Este, was a prisoner with his grandfather, his father, and three uncles; but he rose into favour with Conrad the Salic, was governor of Milan and Genoa, under his son Henry III., and one of the firmest friends of that prince during the whole of his reign.

Henry III. had deprived Conrad, Duke of Bavaria, of the sovereignty of that duchy, in consequence of his bad government and unruly conduct, and had bestowed it upon his own son  
 A.D. 1054. Henry, who during that same year was elected King of the Romans, and declared the successor of his father in the empire. Azo and his brother-in-law, the Duke of Carinthia, were both present at the ceremony of his election, and Azo afterwards accompanied Henry into Italy, where Beatrix, his sister, the widow of Boniface, Marquis of Tuscany, had married Godfrey, Duke of Lorraine, contrary to his wishes. Henry therefore marched an army into Italy, took that princess prisoner, and sent her into Germany; and it was during his absence on this occasion, that the Duke of Carinthia was prevailed

upon to join in the rebellion of the deposed Duke of Bavaria.

BOOK III.

---

The emperor Henry III. died in 1056, leaving the empire to his son, a child only five years of age. He was left under the guardianship of his mother Agnes, but the times were not favourable for the preservation of an infant's rights, or the successful government of a female regent. Beatrix, Duchess of Lorraine, had been greatly irritated by the conduct of her brother; and her party, powerful in Italy, became the declared enemies of her young nephew. There were other causes, however, which troubled the minority of this prince, and led to the misery of his latter days.

From the moment that the head of the Roman church had acquired an influence in secular affairs, the kingdoms of Europe, to which that influence extended, were never suffered to remain long at peace. If kingdom could not be stirred up against kingdom, a civil war was sure to be engendered; and Italy, which, from the time of Charlemagne, had always been esteemed a part of the German empire, was constantly the scene of priestly intrigue. Every emperor had to make his way to the crown by

State of the empire;

And Italy.

**BOOK III.** a fresh conquest of the country, because the feeling was kept up and maintained by the clergy, that no prince could be legally a sovereign until he had been anointed and crowned by the Pope, and at Rome. Under the Saxon

**Policy of the Popes.** emperors the representatives of St. Peter were kept in some kind of subjection; but in the contests that followed the failure of heirs male in that line, they acquired a superiority which they never afterwards lost.

When Henry IV. became of an age to govern, Hildebrand, who had taken the name of Gregory VII., a man of austere manners, a great mind, and unbounded ambition, had forced his way to the papal chair, and founding claims upon charters and grants said to have been given by Constantine and Charlemagne, (but which are now known to have been the most

**Gregory VII. demands back the church property:**

impudent forgeries,) he demanded of Henry the restitution of some of the finest provinces of the empire, which, he maintained, and by these charters proved, had been usurped from the dominion of the church. The emperor, unwilling or unable to comply with his de-

**Excommunicates the emperor.**

mands, was without further ceremony excommunicated by this proud Pope, and deposed

BOOK III.  

---

from his throne, and the princes of Germany commanded to carry the sentence into execution. Unfortunately for Henry, he had been badly educated, and his conduct was not such as to merit respect or insure support. It was the age too of religious superstition, and many princes joined the party of the holy father in opposition to their acknowledged sovereign. The Countess Matilda of Tuscany, the aunt of Henry, and the only daughter of Beatrix, a junior branch of the Este Guelphs, was the devoted supporter of Gregory's claims, and she succeeded in gaining her cousin, the Marquis Azo, to their cause, by having him appointed the commander of the Pope's army.

Azo II. commands  
the army of the Pope.

Henry, unable to cope with the combined forces of Italy, had recourse to negotiation, and agreed to meet his holiness, and to submit the matters in dispute to the decision of a general council. He set out to meet the Pope, who had not yet left Italy, and arriving before the fortress of Canossa, where Gregory was guarded by the army under Azo, was compelled to pass three days and nights in fasting and prayer at the gates of the castle, before he could be admitted to an audience,

The emperor humbled before the castle of Canossa.

BOOK III. or obtain absolution. At last he was permitted to accompany the pontiff on his return to Rome, and cajoled with promises, at the very time that his holiness was intriguing with Rudolph, Duke of Swabia, and instigating him to assume the imperial dignity. In consequence of these secret intrigues, Henry on his return to Germany found the kingdom in a state of great agitation : many of the provinces had openly declared for Rudolph, and his government was in a more embarrassed state than ever.

Guelph V. adheres to the emperor, in opposition to his father :

Is made Duke of Bavaria :

The Marquis of Este, guided by his cousin Matilda, continued firm in the Pope's interests; but his son Guelph, who had succeeded to the Bavarian states, and whose views were more immediately directed to Germany, supported the emperor, and for his fidelity was rewarded with the duchy of Bavaria, which had been forfeited by Otho, his father-in-law. This event took place at Goslar in 1070, when the states of Bavaria submitted quietly to the new made duke, who was the representative of one of the most ancient families in the province; and although, in compliance with the commands of the emperor, he afterwards repudiated his



GUELPH,  
*Chief of the House of Este*  
 MARQUIS OF ESTE.

*Associated with the DUCHY OF BAVARIA* — *1804*

*See also the DUCHY OF MODENA*





duchess, the daughter of Otho, we do not find that his influence was at all affected by such an act, which savoured somewhat of injustice. BOOK III.

In 1073 Guelph, Duke of Bavaria, was in open rebellion against his master. They were reconciled in 1076, but the following year saw them again engaged in active hostilities. Henry, in consequence of these repeated acts of rebellion, deprived him of his newly-acquired sovereignty; but, supported by his faithful Bavarians, and aided by his father in Italy, he was able to maintain his place, and to set the ban of the empire at defiance. He joined the discontented princes who supported the standard of Rudolph, the creature of Gregory, when all were put without the pale of the church who refused to obey the mandate of that Pope; and in that age of ignorance and superstition, many were obliged to comply with a Pope's mandate, who otherwise would have supported the sovereign of their own choice. Fortunately for the peace of Germany, Gregory died in 1085, and Guelph, though he still adhered to the party of the church, began to relax in his exertions to maintain the usurper. In 1096 he was finally

Rebels against the emperor.

Gregory excommunicates all who do not join his party:

His death.

**BOOK III.** reconciled to the emperor, and reinstated in the sovereignty of Bavaria. On the divorce of his first wife, Guelph married a princess of Flanders, the widow of Tostus, Duke or Earl of Northumberland, in England, and the sister of the queen of William of Normandy, the conqueror of that kingdom.

History of the Duchess of Bavaria, and her first husband.

Tostus, according to the most authentic chronicles, was the elder brother of Harold, who, on the death of Edward the Confessor, had been declared King of England; and conceiving that he had been deprived of his birth-right, he commenced a civil war in the north. He was assisted by the king of Norway, who sent a powerful fleet to the Humber. They ravaged and laid waste the counties of York and Northumberland; but being met by the English army under Harold, near the town of Stamford, they were beaten and dispersed, and Tostus was slain. Harold was engaged in this contest when William landed on the coast of Sussex, and the loss which he sustained at the battle of Stamford, led in some measure to his defeat at Hastings.

Judith, the widow of the unfortunate Tostus, became Duchess of Bavaria, a few years

after her brother-in-law was made King of England, and in a few years after her marriage, she was the mother of two sons. It was one of the stipulations in the treaty of peace between the emperor and Guelph, that his sons should succeed him in the duchy of Bavaria.

BOOK III

Azo of Este, on the death of Cunigunda of Altdorf, married the heiress of the duchy of Maine, and by her had two sons, who became the heirs of his Italian states. Eighty-three fiefs or manors are enumerated which this prince held in the kingdom of Lombardy and duchy of Tuscany—from the marquisate of Este, his principal residence, to the county of Luni; besides the *Terra Obertenga*, in the counties of Arezzo, Pisa, and Lucca, and the immense possessions which he received as the dowry of Cunigunda. He married a third time, a cousin of his own, a widow of noble birth, but from her he was divorced in his seventy-eighth year, by the stern decree of his friend Gregory VII.

History of Azo II.  
continued :

His states :

The sons of his second marriage were Hugo and FULK, the latter of whom was the acknowledged ancestor of the Dukes of Ferrara and Modena. Hugo married the daughter of Ro-

**BOOK III.**     bert Guiscard, the conqueror of Sicily, but the  
                      — issue of this marriage became extinct in the  
                                  second generation.

                     The last act which the Marquis Azo sub-  
 His age:        scribed, is dated above a century after his birth,  
                      yet in that act he has shewn that he possessed  
                      the command of his faculties, his family, and

And death.     his fortune. He died in 1097, when Guelph,  
                      his eldest son, laid claim to his whole estates,  
                      but being opposed by his younger brothers,  
                      who had seized upon the passes of the Alps,  
                      he was obliged to yield to a treaty of equal  
                      partition.

Marriage of the eld-  
 est son of the Duke  
 of Bavaria.

                     In 1089, the eldest son of the Duke of  
                      Bavaria, had been sent into Italy, and under  
                      the management of his grandfather, a mar-  
                      riage was effected with the Countess Matilda.  
                      It was a match of policy rather than of love.  
                      The prince was only seventeen years of age,  
                      and Matilda was forty-three; they continued  
                      to live together, for the space of six years;  
                      but as their union gave no hopes of issue, a  
                      divorce took place in 1095, and the young  
                      Guelph returned to his father's court.

                     In 1100, Paschal, the successor of Gregory  
                      VII., with the view of detaching the princes

## BOOK III.

of Germany from the interests of Henry IV., prevailed upon the Duke of Bavaria, with Thie-  
 mon, Bishop of Saltzburg, the Bishop of Ra-  
 tisbon, and a Count Bernard, to raise a body of  
 troops for the support of the Cross in the Holy  
 Land; and in a short time Guelph, joined by the  
 army of the Duke of Poitiers, and Renauld,  
 Count of Burgundy, found himself at the head  
 of 160,000 men.

Guelph leads an  
 army to the Holy  
 Land:

With this immense army, he traversed the  
 Duchy of Carinthia, and entered Bulgaria, where  
 his advance was opposed, and his army attacked  
 by Guzon, duke of that province. The Bulga-  
 rians, however, were defeated, and their duke  
 made prisoner, who, to obtain his liberty, was  
 obliged to supply the army of Guelph with pro-  
 visions during their march, and to furnish him  
 with guides to conduct them to Constantinople.  
 The Emperor Alexis Comenus I. received  
 the prince and his army with every appearance  
 of friendship, calling the chiefs his dearest bro-  
 thers, and the soldiers his children; but at the  
 same time, he sent messengers to inform their  
 enemies privately of the whole of their plans  
 and movements. He provided them with  
 guides, who were bribed to betray them, and

His march and ar-  
 rival at Constanti-  
 nople.

Treachery of the  
 Emperor Alexis Co-  
 menus.

## BOOK III.

Disasters which be-  
fell the Christian ar-  
my at Corizantium.

who having succeeded in separating the army during its advance, the one party was entirely lost among the mountains, where they were either cut off by the Turks, or perished of hunger; and the other, under Guelph, being drawn into the defiles of Corizantium, was, after a succession of attacks which they supported for thirty days with unshaken firmness, almost all destroyed. During these contests, Itha, Princess of Austria, whose religious zeal had led her to accompany this Christian army, and Thiemon, Archbishop of Saltzburg, were taken prisoners. The latter refusing to become a Mahometan, was murdered in the camp of the infidels, and the Marquis Leopold had to pay a heavy ransom for his mother.

At Antioch :

Guelph, with the troops that survived, retired upon Antioch, where he halted for some time, to collect the stragglers of his army, and to allow his sick and wounded to recover, when both being accomplished, they started again for the holy city. Part of his force was sent by sea, and the remainder accompanied him by land.

At Jerusalem :

As they approached Jerusalem, Baldwin, who had succeeded Godfrey, Duke of Bouillon, in the

command of the east, went out to meet them, and conducting them in person to the quarters allotted to them, they spent the Easter of 1101 in that city. But of the 160,000 men which Guelph had commanded on leaving Bavaria, not more than 1000 remained effective, and these having been transferred to the army of Baldwin, perished also in the Holy Land.

BOOK III

The whole destroyed.

The Duke of Bavaria, broken in spirit, and injured in health, now sought to return to his native land. He had seen his army destroyed, and his friends perish; the Duke of Burgundy and the Bishop of Ratisbon had both fallen in Jerusalem, he therefore took leave of Baldwin, and commenced his journey homewards. The ship in which he embarked, having touched at Cyprus, he was there seized with a fever, of which he died. His body was interred at Paphos, but was afterwards brought to Altdorf, where it was deposited in the tomb of his ancestors.

Guelph dies:

When the news of this prince's death reached Germany, his eldest son, Guelph II., was invested with Bavaria, by the emperor in person, who delivered into his hands, in an assembly of the states, the standard of the

His eldest son succeeds him.



**BOOK III.**    duchy, according to the established ceremony  
—                of investiture, in all sovereignties that held  
                 immediately of the empire.

              Soon after his ascension to the duchy, we find  
Guelph II. supporting the younger Henry, who  
under the pretext of restoring Germany to the  
obedience of the church, had raised a formidable  
rebellion against his father, and been received  
as a king, in a general diet, held at Mentz, while  
the aged monarch was imprisoned, and declared  
under a sentence of excommunication, and had  
the crown and other ensigns of royalty torn  
Henry IV. deposed: from his person by force. The son was crowned,  
and the father, who had reigned for fifty years,  
was sent to wander as an outcast in that country  
he had governed so long.

              Though a few faithful princes made a stand  
for Henry IV., the anathema of the Pope soon  
removed them from his interest. He was desert-  
Dies in misery. ed by all, and died of a broken heart, in the fifty-  
fifth year of his age. He applied in his distress to  
the Bishop of Spire, and begged to be admitted  
a minor canon of that cathedral which his bounty  
had founded; but even this humble request  
was denied him, and as he expired without be-  
ing absolved, the ritual of burial could not be

BOOK III.  

---

allowed in consecrated ground, but even from that unhallowed grave in which his body had been laid, it was removed by the command of his unnatural son, and remained uninterred for a period of five years, because no one would pay the church a few crowns for absolution.

After the death of Henry IV., the Duke of Bavaria and his brother continued to support his son, Henry V. They were present at his marriage with Matilda of England, which was celebrated with great pomp in 1110, and next year accompanied them to Rome, whither Henry proceeded at the head of a powerful army, and accompanied by almost all the princes of the empire, for the purpose of compelling the Pope to acknowledge his authority. Ambassadors had been sent to try and arrange the differences with the Pope; when, a treaty being concluded, by which the claims of both parties, in regard to the investiture of the German bishops were regulated, the emperor entered the capital,—was received with extraordinary honours, and conducted in triumph to the Church of St. Peter, where the Pope was waiting to receive him.

The Guelphs support Henry V.:

Accompany him to Rome.

Having mutually sworn to maintain the

BOOK III. treaty which had just been signed, the ceremony of the coronation was proceeded in.

Rebellion of the Pope.

But the Pope, taking advantage of the moment, made so many demands, that the emperor at last would not comply with any of them, and in consequence his holiness refused to complete the service.

Henry caused his troops to surround the altar, and the Pope was taken into custody: a cry was immediately raised, that the life of the Holy Father was in danger, and a scene of much confusion and some bloodshed ensued. The Pope and his cardinals were conveyed to the quarters of the imperial troops, where they were kept close prisoners; when the citizens of Rome rose in a body, and early next morning marched out to attack the Germans. They surprised and cut to pieces the guard which was placed at St. Peter's, before the emperor, who was lodged at the Vatican, could come to their assistance. But the soldiers of the emperor, headed by Guelph, at last gained a complete victory, and Henry left the city, carrying with him the Pope, and the whole of his prisoners. He sent them to the fortress of Celidade Castello, where he placed a sufficient guard for their protection.

Revolt of the Roman citizens.

Louis the Fat, King of France, was induced to arm in defence of the Holy Father; but Paschal, after being two months in prison, granted to Henry the whole of his demands, and a new treaty was signed. The Pope swore never again to excommunicate the emperor, nor to offer any obstacle to his being crowned, while Henry on his part, engaged to set the Pope at liberty within the space of two days, and to conduct him and the other prisoners to the banks of the Tiber. Matters being thus arranged, the emperor re-conducted the Pope to his capital, which he entered on the 12th of April, 1111. The coronation of Henry was completed, and in token of their perfect reconciliation, the Pope and the Emperor partook of the holy sacrament together.

BOOK III.

Paschal II. prisoner.

Released.

In 1116, the countess Matilda died at her palace of Bondeno, in the sixty-ninth year of her age. She was, as we have stated, the daughter of Boniface, Marquis of Tuscany, a cadet of the family of Guelph, and one of the most powerful princes in Italy. Her mother was the daughter of Conrad the Salic, and the sister of Henry III.

History of Matilda,  
Countess of Tus-  
cany.

Succeeding to the princely domains of her

**BOOK III.** father, which comprehended Tuscany, Lombardy, and the Duchy of Mantua, she married the Duke of Lorraine, who was a man of talent, but excessively deformed. After his death, she married, in 1089, the young Prince of Bavaria, from whom she was divorced in 1095, but there being no issue of either marriage, she is said to have intrigued with Gregory VII., and it is certain, that she supported the cause of that Pope in opposition to her uncle, and the interests of the empire. Her army was commanded by the Marquis Azo of Este, and was the cause of Henry IV.'s humiliation ; and the wars which she supported and carried on were the beginning of those contests which so long ravaged Italy, under the name of the Guelph and Ghibelline factions.

Origin of the Guelph and Ghibelline factions.

Matilda leaves her states to the church.

At her death, she bestowed her whole property on the church. The Emperor, however, refused to ratify this will, and Guelph claimed the estates as her legitimate heir. After many fruitless attempts at negotiation, the emperor marched his army a second time to Rome, drove the Pope from his capital, and took possession of that city, with the states of Matilda. Sentence of excommunication was in conse-

Henry V. again at Rome.





HENRY ~~summi~~ THE BLACK,

SECOND DUKE OF BAVARIA

*of the Empire, Count Palatine of the Rhine*

*born 1326, died 1350*

quence pronounced against Henry and his party, and a formidable league was organized by the Archbishop of Mentz, which for a while gave the church party the advantage.

BOOK III.

In the midst of these troubles, Guelph II. Duke of Bavaria, who had endeavoured to mediate between the emperor and Pope, but without effect, died at a small village in the Tyrol named Chufingen. His power gave him a rank among the first princes in Germany, and when he appeared in state, a sword was carried before him. He had gained the affections of his Bavarian subjects, by the mildness of his government, and the attention which he paid to the education of the young nobles of his court. He was remarkable for his sonorous voice, and great corpulence. After his divorce from the Countess Matilda, he remained unmarried, and dying without issue, the whole of the allodial estates, and subordinate fiefs of the family, in Italy, and in Germany were reunited in the person of his only brother Henry, surnamed *The Black*, a prince well-calculated to maintain the dignity, and increase the power of his ancient house.

Death of Guelph II.,  
Duke of Bavaria.  
1190.

Henry the Black  
succeeds his brother

Henry V., worn out by the continued, and



**BOOK III.** so often renewed, wars and intrigues of the party of the church, signed a treaty with Calixtus II. in 1122, by which he granted to

The emperor makes peace with the Pope:

the Popes the right of investing the German bishops with the ring and crosier, while he reserved to himself the right of endowing them with the sceptre. The chapters of the several bishoprics were to retain their privilege of nominating the candidate, but the Pope had acquired the power, which he had so long claimed, of confirming or rendering void their nomination, by granting or withholding his investiture. Henry the Black was one of the mediators by whom this treaty was effected; and Calixtus was so transported with his success, which he conceived equal to the most splendid victory, that he caused the deed to be hung up in St. Peter's Church as a most valuable trophy, and declared to his cardinals, that by this cession, the emperor had parted with his right hand.

Dies 1125.

On the death of Henry V., in 1124, the Duke of Bavaria, with the bishops and nobles who attended at his funeral, issued a writ of summons to the empire, which spoke what Gibbon \*

\* Vide Gibbon's Antiquities of the House of Brunswick.

calls "the language of freedom and resentment." Hereditary claims were then at an end, and consequently it remained with the prelates, nobles, and freemen of the empire to elect a sovereign. In terms, therefore, of the summons which was issued, a diet was held in the neighbourhood of Mentz, where the followers of the different chiefs, amounting to nearly sixty thousand soldiers and freemen, were encamped on either side of the Rhine.

## BOOK III.

The princes of the empire summoned to elect a successor.

At the recommendation of the Archbishop of Mentz, the scene of the election was removed from the camp to the cathedral, and through the influence of the same prelate, the previous nomination of the candidate was intrusted to a committee of ten ecclesiastical and lay princes; a proceeding which laid the foundation of the electoral college, as afterwards established.

There were three candidates for the imperial purple, Leopold, Marquis of Austria; Lothaire, Duke of Saxony; and Frederick, Duke of Suabia. The evasions of the latter betrayed a secret and offensive presumption of hereditary right; for though the son of Frederick of Stauffen, a soldier of fortune, his mother Agnes was

Candidates for the crown.

## BOOK III.

the sister of the last emperor, and the daughter of Henry IV. He had shared with his brother Conrad the rich inheritance of the Franconian dynasty, and considered himself the head of the Ghibelline family. The electors were determined to crush his ambition, by the free election of Lothaire, Duke of Saxony ; but while they were ignorant of the sentiments of the Duke of Bavaria, they were afraid to declare their choice. Henry, they knew, was personally attached to Frederick, as he had given him his daughter in marriage, and they were aware that the votes of his dependent bishops, and the swords of his military vassals, could give the crown to whichever candidate he supported. To the honour of the Guelphic prince, the public interests prevailed over his private feelings. On his appearance in the cathedral, he declared in favour of the Saxon, and Lothaire was proclaimed. Frederick left the field of contest, and retired to Franconia, with a determination to pursue his career of ambition, and a desire to be revenged upon those who had been the means of his disgrace.

Henry the Black, declares in favour of the Duke of Saxony.

Private history of Henry:

Henry, the Black, was born about 1073, and married, in his twenty-seventh year, to the eldest

BOOK III.  
—

daughter of Magnus Billung, Duke of Saxony on the Elbe, and with her acquired a joint interest in the patrimonial estates of that ancient house, when the male line became extinct on the death of Magnus. During the life-time of his elder brother he lived in Italy, and at Este, the castle of his fathers; but his name does not appear in any public record, till 1121 when he succeeded to the states and title of Duke of Bavaria.

In his private life, there is nothing remarkable. He did not long survive Henry V., and it is probable that his last public act was the election of Lothaire. In conformity to the superstition of the age, he is said to have expired in the habit of a monk, in 1125—6, and his duchess did not survive him above sixteen days. By this princess, he had three sons and four daughters.

His character:

Death in 1125:

His family.

The eldest, named Conrad, was a prince of a religious turn of mind, and altogether devoid of ambition. He preferred the quiet and security of the church, to the pomp and bustle of the world; and leaving the court of his father, where it was probable power and honours would have been heaped upon him, he fled to the

History of Conrad,  
the eldest son.

**BOOK III.**     **Abbey of Clairvaux in France,—**pronounced the vow of a Cistercian monk, and adopted the austere discipline of St. Bernard. He afterwards sought the holy city of Jerusalem, and lived the life of a hermit, in the desert, until his body became enfeebled and his health injured. He then endeavoured to make his way back to Germany, but expired at Bari on the sea-coast of Italy, in the same year that his father and mother died.

Henry, surnamed the Proud, succeeds his father:

Henry, the second son, succeeded to the government of Bavaria, and was acknowledged as the heir of his mother, in those allodial domains of the Billung family, which comprehended the greater part of the present Duchy of Luneburg, the states of Lawenburg, and other provinces on the Elbe. Immediately after his father's death, he assembled the states of Bavaria at Ratisbon, and took measures to correct the existing abuses, and to secure a regular system of government in the cities and provinces of the duchy. Lothaire, who knew that he owed his election to the father of this prince, was desirous that a more intimate union should exist between their families, and accordingly he commanded his only daughter, Gertrude, to accept

Marries Gertrude, the only daughter of the emperor:



Engraved by J. G. Smith

HENRY, *Winnid* THE PROUD,

*Count of the Empire*

DUKE OF SAXONY OF THE GUELPHIC DYNASTY

*born 1017 — died 1050*

rested on the 15th of June, 1050, in the Town of Albstadt

in the County of Württemberg



the hand of the Duke of Bavaria. Henry, who, by way of distinction, is called the *Magnanimous* or *Proul*, had good reason to be proud of this alliance with the heiress of the emperor; and when he sent the most distinguished nobles of his court to conduct the bride to his capital, he issued a general invitation to the nobles of Bavaria and Suabia to attend at the celebration of his nuptials, against the feast of Pentecost.

BOOK III.

This invitation, says the chronicle, collected between twenty and thirty thousand guests, consisting of princes, barons, and knights, who, with their numerous attendants, encamped on the banks of a pleasant river, at the foot of the Julian Alps, in the plains of Lechrain, and by jousts and tournaments, and other exercises of chivalry, kept up the feast for several weeks; after which, the duke, with his duchess and court, paid a visit to the emperor, who was at Neurimberg, where the festivities were renewed.

Magnificence of their  
nuptials.

The restless spirit of Frederick of Suabia, the disappointed candidate was not long in stirring up feuds in the empire. The Duke of Bavaria, as his brother, tried to prevent a revolt, but was unsuccessful. Frederick and his brother Conrad took up arms, and the discon-

Revolt of the Suan-  
bian princes: .



BOOK III.     tented princes who had joined their party,  
                      caused the latter to be proclaimed King of  
 A.D. 1130     Germany, in 1130.

The adherents of the House of Suabia were at this time very numerous in the empire, but their most powerful supporter was Albert, Archbishop of Mentz. And as it had become necessary to oppose force to force, the Duke of Bavaria was put in command of the emperor's army. His political sagacity, however, was not less advantageous to his father-in-law, than his sword was powerful in quelling the rebellion. The princes who had joined Conrad were brought back to their allegiance by his persuasion and the gentle means he had recourse to, while the cities of Ulm and Spire, the strong-holds of the rebels, were reduced by the valour of his faithful Bavarians. Frederick was surprised, vanquished, and taken prisoner; and at last both brothers were compelled to lay down their arms, dismiss their forces, and supplicate for pardon.

Henry succeeds in  
quelling the rebel-  
lion.

Italy divided between  
two Popes:

In 1130, the Papal chair became vacant by the death of Honorius II., and the conclave being divided, one party elected Gregory, Cardinal of St. Angelo, who took the title of Inno-

## BOOK III.

cent II., while the other party conferred the triple crown upon Peter of Leon, a priest of Jewish origin, who took the name of Anaclet. The latter, getting possession of the capital, drove his rival from Rome; Innocent appealed to the emperor, and claimed his support as the true representative of St. Peter; while Anaclet, or as he is styled, the anti-pope, obtained the protection of Roger, King of Sicily. Lothaire consented to support Innocent, provided he would renounce his claim to the investiture of the German bishops, and give up the estates of the Countess Matilda. And he having agreed to consider these matters favourably, the emperor entered Italy at the head of a powerful army, which soon succeeded in driving the anti-pope and his party from Rome, where Innocent was received and acknowledged as the true Pope, and Lothaire and his queen Richenza, crowned as emperor and empress.

The emperor supports Innocent II.

During the absence of the emperor in Italy, the government of the German provinces was intrusted to Henry, Duke of Bavaria; and no sooner were the Pope's affairs settled, than Lothaire entered upon the business which so nearly concerned his faithful son-in-law. It

Henry governs Germany in the absence of the emperor:

## BOOK III.

Gains the reversion  
of the states of the  
Countess Matilda  
and Duchy of Sax-  
ony, 1136.

A.D. 1136.  
Emperor again in  
Italy:

Accompanied by  
Henry, and Conrad  
of Suabia:

was acknowledged by all parties, that Henry was the undoubted heir of the Countess Matilda; yet as she had given her possessions, as a free-will offering to the church, it had hitherto been found impossible to recover them. Lothaire, by way of compromise, agreed to accept of the investiture of her patrimony, while the payment of an annual quit-rent of one hundred marks of silver should declare the supremacy of the Pope, and the reversion was granted to Henry the Proud, on condition that he should swear fealty, and perform homage to the Holy See. In addition to all these grants, the emperor, on his return to Germany, divested himself of the Duchy of Saxony, and bestowed it upon Henry, 1136.

In consequence of the dissensions and civil war, that still continued to rage in Italy, the emperor was once more called upon to support the altar and the throne, against the schism of the anti-pope, and the invasion of the King of Sicily. He crossed the Alps at the head of a numerous army, attended by the empress, the Duke of Bavaria, Conrad of Suabia, and a number of prelates. Fifteen hundred men at arms marched under the banner of Henry the

Proud, and he was allowed to take rank as the second person in the army of the powers of Germany.

BOOK III.

A.D. 1136.

The imperial force entered Italy in the month of September, and commenced operations by taking a castle, situated on the banks of the Garda. The cities in the neighbourhood immediately sent to intreat that the emperor would become an arbiter in their differences, and Milan and Cremona, which had long been at war, agreed to submit their cause to his impartial decision. Cremona was found the aggressor, upon which the emperor advanced to Pavia, whose rebellion was compromised by a heavy fine, and Bologna and other places being reduced to obedience, a general diet of the Lombard states was ordered to meet on the plain of Roncalia, against the 7th of November.

Henry's conduct in Italy:

A.D. 1136.

The greater part of the Italian princes were punctual in their attendance, and measures were taken effectually to restore tranquillity to the kingdom. Lothaire passed the greater part of the month of December in the territory of Reggio, and before he left that city, established a council for the government of Lombardy, of which the empress was constituted president.

## BOOK III.

A.D. 1136-7.

The head-quarters of the army were fixed at Ravenna for the winter, and the troops were cantoned in the neighbouring villages.

Henry of Bavaria, and Conrad of Suabia, were the constant companions of Lothaire, and his most intimate privy-councillors ; with them he arranged the measures that were to be adopted, as soon as the season would allow the army to take the field, and to their judgment he intrusted the chief operations of the campaign.

Detached with 3000  
cavalry :

A.D. 1137.

His success in this  
expedition:

In an interview with the Pope, which Lothaire had at Viterbo, it was arranged that the Duke of Bavaria should be detached with three thousand horse, to re-establish Robert, Count of Capua, in his principality, and compel Campania to acknowledge the authority of Innocent. This force was not equal to the capture of Rome, but on his march southward, he compelled the powerful Abbey of Mount Cassin, and the Duchy of Capua, to acknowledge their lawful governors. Benevento, which refused to open its gates, was besieged in form, and after a vigorous defence, taken by assault.

In the meantime, the emperor who had left Ravenna, after advancing through Romagna,

BOOK III.  

---

the march of Ancona and Umbria, without meeting with any resistance, had entered Apuleia and commenced the siege of Bari, a city that still held out for the anti-pope. Henry having accomplished the service on which he was employed, became anxious to join the army before that city; he, therefore, undertook to escort the Pope from Pisa to Bari, a distance of five hundred miles, and through a country filled with the garrisons of Norman and Saracen soldiers, in the pay of Roger of Sicily.

They arrived in safety during the siege, and the duke having rendered an account of his success in the expedition, was again detached to drive the invaders from Apuleia. In a very short time that province and many neighbouring cities were recovered from the infidels, and the bishops and magistrates who had been expelled, were re-instated in their governments. Henry, guided by prudence and valour, succeeded in all his undertakings, while the emperor, from a want of combination and energy, began to lose ground in Italy. After passing some days in regulating the affairs of the Abbey of Mount Cassin, he was desirous of invading Sicily, the strong hold of Roger; but

Rejoins the emperor  
at Bari:

His success at Apuleia.

## BOOK III.

the Germans had become tired of the war, and being worn out with sickness and fatigue, they demanded to be led back to their own country.

Lothaire was obliged to listen to their complaints; and commencing his retreat, he passed through Tuscany, took the rout of Lombardy, and halted for a short time at Cremona. The inhabitants of this city denounced their neighbours of Cremona as rebels, and the emperor sent a part of his force to reduce it to subjection. But after lying a month before the place, they were obliged to retreat, and as Cremona was not considered safe, Lothaire retired upon Milan, that he might collect the troops that were scattered in garrisons throughout the territory of Verona. He then continued his retreat upon Trent; where, during the feast of St. Martin, he became unwell. He did not however hesitate to renew his march, but at last he was obliged to halt at a nameless village, on the confines of Bavaria, where, on the 3d day of December, 1137, he breathed his last.

Lothaire retires from  
Italy:

Is taken ill at Trent:

Dies, 1137.

The Duke of Bavaria had long been considered his successor in the empire, not from his high rank, but as the husband of his

## BOOK III.

only child; immediately on the emperor's decease, he seized upon the Regalia of the empire, and summoned a diet to meet at Mentz, against the feast of Pentecost. These measures were the more necessary, as he was well aware that he had a formidable rival in Conrad, Duke of Suabia, a prince who, even during the lifetime of Lothaire, had a party sufficiently strong to set the imperial ban at defiance. Yet even in point of rank and power, the Duke of Bavaria had no competitor in the empire. He was Sovereign of Saxony and Bavaria, and Lord of Verona and Spoleto, while (as the nominal vassal of the Pope,) he enjoyed the revenues of the whole patrimony of the Countess Matilda. Had his manners been conciliating, or his conduct yielding, he might easily have attained to the imperial dignity; but the surname of the *Proud*, which he had early obtained, sufficiently marks his character and general demeanour. Conrad of Suabia, on the contrary, had made it his business to court those whom his rival despised, and he soon began to reap the advantage which his popularity gave him.

Henry attempts to succeed his father-in-law:

His claims:

His rival.

The Archbishop of Treves, the enemy of Henry, issued a counter-summons, and address-



## BOOK III

Conrad elected emperor.

ing the princes in whom he could confide, he urged them to meet at Coblentz, which they did on the 22d of February, and in an assembly countenanced by the legate of the Pope, Conrad was proclaimed King, and conducted to Aix-la-chapelle, where he was crowned by the said legate on the 13th of March.

A.D. 1138.

Henry gives up the regalia:

Takes the field at the head of an army:

Henry maintained that this election of his rival was void, as it was done in too precipitate a manner, and in the absence of a majority of the princes, whose votes ought to have been received. Conrad, to conciliate these princes, invited them to meet him at Bamberg. Henry refused to attend; but his mother-in-law having joined Conrad, the discontented princes were brought over to his party, and this diet confirmed his election. Henry was ordained to appear at Ratisbon, against the day of St. Peter, and deliver up the regalia, which were still in his possession. He obeyed the order, and delivered up the ensigns of the imperial dignity, but immediately placed himself at the head of a body of armed men, with the view of invading the states of Frederick, the brother of the emperor. But before any act of hostility was committed, Conrad called a diet at Wurtzburg, and, by

the general consent of the princes, Henry was declared the enemy of the empire, and proscribed as a rebel. In another assembly, held afterwards at Goslar, the decree issued against the Duke of Bavaria was confirmed, and his states confiscated. Bavaria was given to Leopald, Marquis of Austria and Saxony, to Albert, surnamed the Bear, Count of Ascanio, and Marquis of Brandenburg. The latter was the cousin-german of Henry, their mothers being sisters, and daughters of Magnus Billung.

BOOK III.

Declared a rebel :

His states confiscated.

Henry saw himself deprived of his states, without losing his courage ; and though the Bavarians, with the exception of the ancient vassals of the House of Guelph, deserted his standard, and joined his rival, the Saxons, more from enmity to the House of Suabia, than from any attachment they felt for Henry, continued to support him.

Albert, however, entering the Duchy with a powerful army, got hold of Launburg, Bardewick, and other cities, and laid siege to Bremin, which after considerable resistance was also taken. This success began to change the current of opinion in his favour, and the clergy seemed inclined to join him, when Henry, who, during

Saxony almost subdued by his rival :

**BOOK III.** that interval remained in Bavaria, where the presence of the Duke of Austria kept him in check, had no sooner got his strong places into tolerable order, than he set out for Saxony with an escort of four Bavarian horsemen, and being joined by the Saxons, and the Guelphic vassals of Suabia and Bavaria, who began to recover from their first alarm, he recovered Lune-

**Recovers the Duchy:** burg, and the whole lower part of the Duchy in a very short time.

**A.D. 1138.**

Albert was obliged to take refuge at the court of the emperor, when Conrad seeing the progress of his enemy, and the inability of his friend to maintain the contest, took the field in person. Henry was a veteran in the art of war, his pride was stimulated by shame and resentment, and his army being considerably increased, he was no longer afraid of the imperial hosts, but boldly advanced to give them battle. Conrad, aware of the inferiority of his own troops, was not willing to hazard an action, and therefore entered into a treaty, which was negotiated by the Archbishop of Treves, and by which it was stipulated, that Henry should remain in possession of Saxony, and Albert receive the investiture of Brandenburg,

which had fallen to the crown, by the failure of heirs male. All irregularities committed during the war were to be forgotten and forgiven, and each was to submit to the injuries he had sustained. These terms being ratified, the respective armies were disbanded.

BOOK III.

Concludes a peace  
with the emperor:

The Marquis of Austria in the meantime had taken possession of Bavaria, and by force of arms had compelled the cities to acknowledge his authority. Ratisbon, which had held out for a time, was also subdued, but a diet was announced, in which the affairs of the two Duchies were to be taken into consideration. Henry was preparing to attend that diet, when he was suddenly seized with a severe illness, which in a few days terminated his earthly career. It was generally believed that he had been poisoned, and it must be confessed that there was something suspicious in the time and manner of his death.

A.D. 1139.

Henry dies, suppo-  
sed by poison, 1139:

Henry the Proud died in 1139, in the thirty-seventh year of his age, leaving an only son, then in his tenth year, under the guardianship of his brother Guelph, who had inherited the Italian fiefs, and resided in that kingdom.

As soon as he was made acquainted with his brother's decease, Guelph repaired to Germany,

## BOOK III.

Guelph, his brother,  
claims Bavaria :

A.D. 1140:

Is beaten by the em-  
peror.

and finding many of the vassals of his house still unsubdued, and faithful to the interests of his young ward, he declared war, placed himself at their head, and shewed that he was determined to maintain his rights, while the Pope and the King of Sicily, who were anxious to find the emperor employment in his own country, sent a large body of auxiliaries to assist in fighting his battles. The Bavarians and the allies met the Austrians near Neresheim, and a sanguinary conflict ensued, but neither party could claim the victory. Another action took place near Ellerhofe, and was equally indecisive. Conrad now undertook to put an end to this contest, and having called a diet of the empire at Worms, Guelph was declared a rebel, and it was resolved to prosecute the war against him. The emperor left Worms for Wurtzburg, and from thence joined the army, before Weinsberg, a strong fortress held by the rebels. Guelph brought up his army to the relief of this fortress, but they were attacked and beaten by the imperialists, and the prince himself escaped with difficulty, after having performed prodigies of valour.

There 'is a remarkable anecdote connected

## BOOK III.

A anecdote of the siege  
of Weinsberg.

with the siege of Weinsberg, which, as it is recorded in all the chronicles, cannot with propriety be omitted here. Conrad had caused it to be intimate<sup>d</sup> to the citizens, that in consequence of their obstinate rebellion, he would only spare the women and children, when the place should be taken. The ladies therefore sent a deputation, to beg that they might be permitted to leave the city, and take with them whatever they could carry. Conrad granted their request, but his surprise was great, when he saw the ladies of Weinsberg issue from the gate, with each her husband or father on her back. He was so struck with this mark of female heroism, that he pardoned the whole, and allowed them, after he had taken possession of the city, to remain in the quiet possession of their homes.

A.D. 1141.

The death of the Marquis Leopald, which took place in 1141, made little difference in the affairs of Bavaria. Conrad gave the investiture to Frederick, the brother of Leopald, who having succeeded in gaining the affections of Gertrude, the widow of Henry the Proud, acquired, by his marriage with this princess, an additional claim to the sovereignty of that Duchy.

## BOOK III.

Guelph renews the war:

These arrangements greatly irritated Guelph, who again, at the head of a considerable force, entered Bavaria, and laid waste a part of the country. The emperor sent an army to the support of the Bavarians, and Guelph retired upon Frisingen, but was pursued to the gates of that city by Frederick of Austria.

This civil war continued for several months, when it was terminated by a general diet held at Wurtzburg and Frankfort, in 1142, and though Guelph refused to ratify the terms

Compelled to submit to the decree of the empire.

agreed upon, in as far as he was concerned, he was not in a condition to support a war, and therefore submitted to his fate, and retired into Italy; where the emperor to secure his friendship, invested him with the Duchy of Spoleto.

---







Fig. 1. Plate 2.

**HENRY** *Surmame* **THE LION,**  
*Earl of Gossaria, Lord of the*  
*Isle of*  
**SOVEREIGN of BRUNSWICK & LUNEBURG.**  
*Born 1129 and died 1195.*

Engraved from a drawing by the late Mr. J. G. Smith.

Printed by J. G. Smith, 10, St. Martin's Lane.

## BOOK IV.

CONTAINING THE HISTORY OF HENRY THE LION.

THE only son of Henry the Proud was in his tenth year, when, by the death of his father, he became the head of the House of Guelph. Deserted by his mother, who, in the second year of her widowhood, married Frederick of Austria, the rival of his house and the enemy of his family, the superintendence of his education and the preservation of his rights devolved upon his grandmother, the empress Richenza and his uncle Guelph, Duke of Spoleto. In the preceding pages, we have traced the descent of the young Henry in the male line, through a long series of ages; but as the representation of many illustrious and ancient families now centred in him, these annals would be incomplete, if we did not also

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1130.

Henry succeeds his father:

His guardians:

BOOK IV. give some account of his ancestors in the female  
 line.  
 His mother's an-  
 cestors.

In the days of Wittekind the Great, the last of  
 the Pagan kings, and the first Christian Duke of  
 Saxony, there lived a Count Eckbert, a noble-  
 man of the ancient race, and a warrior, whose  
 deeds had made him illustrious, in what may be  
 called the war of *Conversion*. He was known  
 and respected by Charlemagne, and the esteem-  
 ed friend and companion of Wittekind. He  
 had an only son named Bruno, who married  
 Gisela, the daughter and heiress of the Duke  
 of Saxony, and the issue of that marriage was  
 Ludolph, who flourished as Duke of Saxony,  
 and died in 859.

Otho. The son of Ludolph was Otho, styled the  
 Great Duke of Saxony, who refused the crown  
 of Germany in 912, and his son was Henry,  
 surnamed the Fowler, who was elected to that  
 crown in 919. The elder branch of Henry's  
 family became extinct at the death of Otho III.,  
 but the grandson of his youngest son Henry,  
 surnamed *Rixosus*, Duke of Bavaria, succeeded  
 to the imperial crown, as Henry II., and with  
 him this dynasty ended. Besides the father of

Henry II., the Duke of Bavaria (*Rixosus*) had another son, named Bruno, in memory of his great ancestor, the son of Count Eckbert. This prince received, as his patrimony, the country about the Ocker, and having fixed his residence at a village established by Charlemagne on the banks of that river, it became known as the *Vicus Brunonis*, and when enlarged and formed into a city, afterwards gave its name to the principality of which it formed the capital. There are five male descendants of this Bruno, who are mentioned in history as margraves of Saxony and princes of Brunswick; but on the death of Eckbert II., without issue, in 1090, the male line became extinct, and Gertrude, his only sister, was all that was left of the blood of Wittekind and Eckbert, and of their no less illustrious descendants, the Saxon emperors.

## BOOK IV.

Henry Rixosus,  
Duke of Bavaria,  
son of Henry the  
Fowler:

His son Bruno:

Founds Brunswick.

This princess married Henry, surnamed the Fat, Count of Nordheim, the descendant of a race of free barons, who lived and reigned in the country about Gottingen, and resided in the Castle of Bomenburg, long previous to the conquest of Saxony. Their origin and their history are alike unknown, till the reign of Otho I., when a Count of Bomenburg is men-

Family of Nordheim.

## BOOK IV.

Family of Supplingen-  
genburg.

tioned in some of the charters granted by that emperor. The successor of Otho, was Herman, Count of Nordheim, who flourished in the reign of Otho II. From this prince, a series of four generations are traced without difficulty, when, at last, their race became extinct on the death of Henry the Fat, the husband of Gertrude of Brunswick, without male issue. Richenza, the eldest daughter of Henry and Gertrude, carried the wealth and the blood of Saxony and Nordheim to the House of Supplingen-  
burg, another race of Saxon lords, who ruled in the woody country of Darlington, and held the castles of Summerschenburg, Waldeck, and Supplingen-  
burg.

The Emperor Lo-  
thaire.

These counts traced their origin from Albin, chief of the Ostphals in the days of Charlemagne, but the first who is mentioned in any existing record, is Gevchard or Gerhard, Count of Querfurth, who was killed in battle at Unstrat in 1075. This Gerhard was the father of Lothaire, Count of Supplingen-  
burg, who on the death of Magnus, last Duke of Saxony, of the family of the Billungs, received from Henry V., the Duchy of Saxony, as a reward for his services to that emperor, during the period he was

in rebellion against his father, and who, on the death of Henry, succeeded to the imperial crown. BOOK IV.

Lothaire left no male issue, and the accumulated wealth and concentrated blood of the families of Saxony, Nordheim, and Supplingenburg, were conveyed to the House of Guelph, by the marriage of Gertrude, the only daughter of Lothaire and Richenza, with Henry the Proud, who, in right of his mother, had become the representative of the House of Billung.

The ancestors of Herman Billung are lost in the obscurity of the tenth century, and we only know that he was a chief of great fame, and tried fidelity, who, when Otho I. advanced into Italy, was intrusted with the command of the Saxon frontier. He performed that duty in a manner to merit the approbation of the emperor, and when Otho returned to Germany, he was made Duke of Saxony, on the Elbe, and obtained the provinces of Luneburg and Verden. The male descendants of this prince enjoyed the title of Dukes of Saxony to the fourth generation; but with Magnus, the last Duke, who died in 1106, their name became extinct, and Wulfilda, his eldest daughter, carried his wealth

The Billung family:

**BOOK IV.** and his blood to the Guelphic family, by her  
 All centre in Henry : marriage with Henry the Black.

Thus, then, was the young Henry, in right of his own mother, the legitimate heir of Wittekind and of the imperial House of Saxony ; of the Princes of Brunswick, the Counts of Nordheim, and the Counts of Supplingenburg ; and in right of his grandmother, the representative of the House of Billung. His origin, therefore, was not only more ancient, but more illustrious, than that of any other prince in Christendom.

Character of his youth :

His youth was spent in retirement with his grandmother, and it is remarked, that while yet a child, he shewed an extraordinary degree of energy and decision of character, and that he delighted only in the most noble and manly exercises. As he grew up, he displayed so much courage and fortitude in all his undertakings, that his playfellows gave him the surname of the Lion, which he ever afterwards continued to retain. Under the eye of the empress, he received the education of a Saxon and a Soldier, was taught to support the inclemency of the seasons, and to disdain the temptations of luxury.

His education.

He early learnt to manage the horse and .

BOOK IV.  

---

the lance, and to vie with his equals in the exercise of military and civil virtues; and by the winning graces of modesty and gentleness, to disguise the superior gifts of fortune or of nature.

When he had attained the age of eighteen, he appeared at the court of the emperor, and was admitted into the diet at Frankfort. He received the honour of knighthood, a ceremony lately instituted, to declare a prince of age, in place of the ancient custom of delivering the sword and spear; and was allowed to sit and vote with the princes of the empire, when Henry, the son of Conrad, was elected King of the Romans. But when he had given his vote on that occasion, he rose and boldly demanded from Conrad and the assembled states, the restitution of his own rights as Duke of Bavaria. "If," said he, "my father forfeited those rights, it might be perfectly just to deprive him of them during his life; but it is certainly most unjust to punish the son for his father's faults. The emperor cannot give the duchy of Bavaria to another, without depriving me of my unalienable birthright, for as such I claim it."

Declared of age, and admitted into the German diet:

A.D. 1147:

His speech in the diet:

Demands his just rights.

He spoke with a spirit and firmness that



**BOOK IV.** made a deep impression upon the emperor and the assembly, and while he seemed with assumed humility to solicit a favourable award from the known justice of the sovereign, he did not hesitate to insinuate that his faithful vassals were able to maintain his rights. The emperor, infatuated with the crusading mania, had called this diet to regulate the army of the cross, and not to decide on private grievances. He listened with attention to the demands of the young duke, and solemnly promised that on his return from the Holy Land these demands should be taken into consideration, and justice done to Henry. Satisfied with this promise, the duke then turned his attention to other matters, and as he was too young to take that command in the army of the emperor which his rank entitled him to hold, it was agreed that he should lead his Saxon forces against the idolatrous Sclavi, whose conversion or extermination had become a subject of much consideration with the Christian princes in Germany.

The Emperor promises him justice.

The origin of the Sclavi tribes:

About the beginning of the fifth century, a race of people till then unknown began to arrive from the east, and to occupy those pro-

BOOK IV.  
—

vinces on the Danube, and along the shores of the Baltic, which had been deserted by the Goths and Vandals, on their conquest of Spain and Portugal. They were generally known as the Sclavi or Slavi. Many tribes of this people settled in Bohemia and Poland, while others penetrated as far west as the Elbe; and for many centuries kept possession of the provinces of Mecklenburg and Pomerania. These last were known as the Venedi, Heneti, or Obotriti, and were esteemed not only the grossest idolaters, but the most inhuman persecutors of the christians ever known. How they continued to exist so long as an independeet Their independence and idolatrous people when christianity had been established on every side of them, and had flourished for many centuries, with the spirit of conquest and conversion unsubdued in its professors, is a matter which may excite astonishment, but cannot now be explained, though the probability is, that they lived in the midst of forests and marshes which afforded them a surer means of defence than the number of their fighting men, or the construction of their weapons of war.

Among the idols which they worshipped, the

Idolatry:

## BOOK IV.

goddess SEVA held a conspicuous place ; she was insatiable in her desire for human sacrifices, and every Christian prisoner that was taken alive was immolated at her shrine. In some respects, the conduct of these savages was as cruel to their own relations, as it was barbarous to their enemies. When their parents became old and infirm, they were murdered by their children; and one of their greatest religious ceremonies, consisted in feasting upon the bodies of their murdered friends. Yet, by the laws of this people, it was commanded, that a man's house should be burnt over his head who refused the rights of hospitality to a stranger.

The Duke of Sax-  
ony joins Denmark  
in a crusade against  
this people :

His marriage :

A.D. 1147 :

It was in a war against these idolatries, that Henry agreed to join the forces of Denmark, and the other states of the North, while the emperor and his uncle Guelph were engaged in Palestine, and the princes of the Rhine, and the nobles of England, were warring against the Moors in Spain and Portugal. But before he left Frankfort, he celebrated his marriage with Clementina, the daughter of Conrad, Duke of Zahringen, and that prince accompanied them on their return to Saxony, that he might take a command in the army of Henry.

Early in the following year, not less than sixty thousand warriors were enrolled under the Saxon banner, and ready to march into the country of the Sclavi; and with that force Henry advanced upon the Duchy of Mecklenburg, which was governed by Niclotus, king of the Obotrites.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1146:

He advances into  
Mecklenburg:

The Saxons were feebly opposed, and for some months continued to lay waste the country, and burn its defenceless villages; when, at last, it was represented to the young commander, and his more aged associates, that if their troops continued to follow up this war of extermination, there would neither be Pagans to convert, nor subjects to pay tribute: upon which, they began to relax in their severities. Henry entered into a treaty with the King of the Obotrites, and on condition of his promising to become a Christian, and to set at liberty his Danish prisoners, the Saxons returned to their own country.

Makes peace.

In Denmark, about this period, the crown was contended for by two rival princes, Canute and Sweno, but such was their devotion to the cause of religion, that they had agreed to suspend their private quarrel, and march together

Dissensions in Denmark:

## BOOK IV.

Lead to the defeat  
of the Danes.

Henry supports Canute  
against Sweno.

under the banner of the cross. Their fleet left the island in two squadrons, one commanded by Canute, and the other by Sweno. They sailed for the coast of Mecklenburg, and were joined by a body of Saxons, sent by Henry the Lion. They commenced the blockade of the Port of *Obinam*, but the forces of the two rivals were no sooner called upon to act together, than their jealousy and hatred of each other began to make its appearance. Notwithstanding the truce that had been sworn to, and the hostages that had been given on both sides, to bind them to a good understanding, they began to turn their arms against each other; and while they were in this state of confusion, the fleet of Sweno was attacked by the Rugen islanders, who had arrived to support the Sclavi, their neighbours, and a great many of his vessels were burnt or destroyed, and almost his whole army made prisoners. It was probably the news of this disaster, that led the Duke of Saxony to conclude the treaty with the Sclavi, by which he gained little honour, and less advantage, though it allowed him to send a body of troops into Denmark to support the party of Canute, who was his particular friend, and detach another division upon Ditmar, to se-

cure that country, and obtain redress for the loss of Rudolph, Count of Stade, who had been murdered by his rebellious subjects.

BOOK IV.

The disasters which had befallen the Christian army in Asia, began now to be known in Europe, and almost every family of any distinction had to mourn the loss of a father or a child. Henry, King of the Romans, who governed the empire, in the absence of his father, had a difficult task to perform, from the impression produced by the news of these disasters. In the first place, to relieve his father, who was in a strange land without money and without troops, it was necessary to raise a considerable sum of money, in a country already drained of the whole of its treasures; and in the second place, he had to study how to avoid a civil war, which he saw ready to break out at home, from the discontent that prevailed in consequence of the severe individual losses that had been sustained in Palestine, and the desire which Henry the Lion now shewed, to obtain possession of the Duchy of Bavaria. He wrote to the emperor to hasten his return, and caused the most favourable reports to be circulated in every direction, of battles fought and won, and trea-

Disasters of the Eastern Crusade known in Europe.

Henry takes advantage of the state of the empire, to urge his claims:

BOOK IV.   sures gained, while at the same time he increased the army by new levies.

These wise precautions succeeded in keeping the empire in a state of tranquillity until Conrad arrived in the beginning of 1149.

The moment it was known that the emperor was arrived at Ratisbon, and had resumed the government of the empire, Henry began to remind him of his promise in regard to Bavaria. But it was a matter which required serious consideration, and as Conrad could not immediately give the duke a decided answer, his patience became exhausted, and he resolved to do justice to himself. The army which had been employed against the Sclavi was still in existence, and with it he resolved to march upon Bavaria. But while the preparations necessary for this march were going on, he sent spies into that province, to ascertain the feelings of the nobles, and their disposition towards him. Their report was in some measure favourable, and he placed himself at once at the head of his troops, and advanced, with a determination to establish his right by force of arms. Henry of Austria had no army that could contend with the Saxons; he therefore had recourse to the

Marches his army  
into Bavaria.

emperor, who sent him a force sufficient to stop the advance of Henry. BOOK IV.

---

Saxony during this expedition was left in a defenceless state, and many of the nobles who had become disgusted with the impatient and hasty temper of their young sovereign, and his want of consideration for their feelings, were ready to take up arms against him. This was communicated to the emperor, by Albert the Bear, Marquis of Brandenburg, and Henry of Austria was directed to watch the motions of the Duke, without coming to any decisive action; and above all, to occupy the passes in his rear, so that he might find it impossible to return with his army to the support of Saxony when attacked. Discontent in Saxony:

Conrad ordered the imperial army to assemble in the neighbourhood of Goslar, to which city he had proceeded with his court, and taking the command, he advanced to besiege Brunswick. When this unexpected attack was announced to Henry on the banks of the Danube, he turned to the messenger, and desiring him to command his vassals to assemble at Brunswick on Christmas day, he assured him that they would find him at their head. The emperor invades that province.



## BOOK IV.

Henry returns to  
Brunswick.

Imperialists retire;  
peace arranged.

Henry reconciles the  
Saxon nobles to his  
government.

The emperor pre-  
pares to march into  
Italy:

The time was short, the distance great and all the passes were guarded; but, disguising his person, he started with three faithful nobles, as romantic as himself, and advancing secretly and swiftly through the hostile country, he appeared on the fifth day at the head of his army, in Brunswick, and compelled his imperial adversary to sound a precipitate retreat, and retire upon Goslar, where his troops were put into winter quarters.

Henry, who had received a lesson from experience, began to alter his conduct, and by attention and kindness, he soon regained the good opinion of his offended nobles. As the spring advanced, his army was increased, and was in a situation to meet the forces of the empire, had Conrad been disposed to renew the war. But he was satisfied with having compelled Henry to withdraw from Bavaria; and retiring to Thuringen, he visited the cities of Erfurt, Nuremberg, and Spire, and passed down the Rhine to Utrecht. Conrad was occupied in establishing the tranquillity of the empire, and in making some preparations for an expedition into Italy, to receive the imperial crown at Rome, and to recover those

portions of the Italian states, which had been seized upon by the King of Sicily, and others, when his sudden death at Bamberg, on the 15th of February, 1152, put an end to all his plans and preparations.

BOOK IV.

But dies suddenly.  
A.D. 1152.

The unanimous election of Frederick, Duke of Suabia and Alsace, surnamed *Barbarossa*, as the successor of his uncle Conrad, seemed to open to Henry the Lion a speedy prospect of having his claims settled. The young monarch was the friend and kinsman of the duke and his uncle, and equally the friend of the Duke of Austria; he therefore laboured with sincerity to terminate their Bavarian quarrel, by an amicable compromise, or a judicial sentence. Henry, with his usual impatience, pressed for a speedy decision, but so many minor points were involved, and required to be considered, that the final settlement was postponed till the return of the emperor from his coronation at Rome.

Frederick Barbarossa succeeds to the empire :

The friend of Henry the Lion :

The emperor while at Goslar, resolved to visit Italy in 1154, and having prevailed upon Henry the Lion to accompany him, measures were taken to raise such an army as it became

Who accompanies him into Italy.

**BOOK IV.** the Guelphs to command, in an expedition considered so important.

At this period, Adrian IV. had been elected to the Popedom, but was opposed by a factious party in the city of Rome, which seemed desirous of wresting the civil power from his holiness. These disturbances, therefore, hastened the departure of Frederick, who at the commencement of October, appeared at the head of a numerous army, and was attended by all the princes of Germany; but the gallant squadrons that marched under the banner of the Lion, were equal in number to those of the emperor himself.

**A.D. 1154:**

His army assembles  
in Bavaria:

The army assembled on the banks of the Leck, near to Augsburg, where the emperor reviewed it. He then advanced through the Tyrol, and traversing the Valley of Trent, encamped on the plains of Verona, near the lake of Garda. In the month of November, they reached to the

Holds a court or assembly at Ronçalia.

Po, and took up a position on the plains of Ronçalia, within a few leagues of Placentia. Here it was that for ages the sovereigns of the empire had held their courts, on their advance to receive the crown at Rome; and on the plains of Ronçalia, every vassal of the empire was called

upon to appear, and do homage for his fiefs. Frederick surrounded by his princes and nobles, kept his court there for five days, listening to complaints from various cities of Lombardy; and then, under the guidance of the consuls from Milan, he started with his army for that city.

BOOK IV.

The consuls led the army through a desert country, where the troops could neither find lodgings nor forage, and where being overtaken by bad weather, they were considerably harassed. The emperor, in a rage, dismissed these false guides, and assured them that their city should pay for their treachery: a promise which he kept; for having taken Rosetta, he advanced upon Milan, where the inhabitants, to appease his wrath, destroyed the palace of the consuls. From Milan the emperor took the route of Pavia, and destroying Ast, he laid siege to Tortona.

Perfidy of the consuls of Milan.

The siege of Tortona:

This city, built on a mountain, was defended by a number of towers, one of which it was said had been built by Tarquin the Proud, in the days of ancient Rome. It had an excellent garrison, which had been sent from Milan, and knowing the strength of their position, they were determined to make a vigorous defence.

## BOOK IV.

Where Henry the  
Lion distinguishes  
himself.

Frederick spends  
some time at Pavia,

And advances upon  
Rome:

Frederick caused his army to be formed into four divisions, and with them he surrounded the walls. The first division, which he commanded in person, was placed on the west side; Henry the Lion commanded the second division, which was on the south; while the other two divisions, composed of the Italian auxiliaries from Pavia, were placed on the north and east parts of the city. The siege was carried on with great spirit, and the city defended with considerable success; but at last the garrison being worn out, demanded to capitulate. The troops were granted their lives and their freedom, but the city itself was delivered up to pillage, and afterwards burnt. The troops of Pavia, who had conducted themselves with great bravery during the siege, besought the emperor, after this victory, to return to their city, that he might enjoy the honours of a triumph; and having yielded to their request, he spent some days in the ancient palace of the kings of Lombardy, and was crowned with the iron crown of that kingdom. From Pavia he passed through the territory of Placentia to Bologna, and from thence to Tuscany, on his advance to Rome.

BOOK IV.  
—

The Pope was at Viterbo when he heard of Frederick's advance, and alarmed lest he should approach the capital as an enemy, he sent three cardinals to negotiate a treaty; but as Frederick had already sent two prelates to his holiness, to arrange with regard to the ceremony of his coronation, he refused to admit the Pope's embassy, until his own returned. The Pope, adopting the same line of conduct, had refused to admit the messengers of the emperor, until his embassy returned from the headquarters of Frederick. These prelates however, on their return to their respective masters, met on the way, and, by mutual agreement, they returned to Frederick; who, having sworn upon the cross and the Holy Evangelists, to preserve to the Pope, and the cardinals, their lives, their members, their liberties, their honour, and their goods, it was arranged that an interview should take place, and that every thing should be arranged for the emperor's coronation.

Negotiates with the  
Pope :

The Pope then left his strong hold, and advanced to the quarters of the emperor, where he was received by a number of German nobility, and an immense concourse of priest and laymen, who conducted him to the tent of the

## BOOK IV.

—  
 Frederick refuses to  
 hold the Pope's stir-  
 rup :

Their interview :

emperor But Frederick having refused to hold the stirrup, as it had been customary for the emperors to do when the Pope dismounted, the cardinals took offence and retired from the camp; while Adrian, a little disconcerted, contrived to get off his horse, and to take his seat upon a throne that had been prepared for him. Here it was, that Frederick prostrated himself before the representative of St. Peter; and having kissed his foot, advanced to receive the kiss of peace; but this Adrian refused to give, until Frederick had granted him those honours which all his predecessors had been accustomed to receive from the emperors of the West.

Several conferences were held on the subject; and as there was still some of the nobility alive who had been present at the meeting of the Emperor Lothaire and the Pope of his day, and who proved that he had submitted to the custom, Frederick also agreed to conform. Next day, in presence of his army, he held the stirrup of Adrian, while he rode a stone's throw, and was admitted to receive the kiss of peace.

Consults with Henry  
 the Lion :

Henry, the chosen friend of Frederick, was consulted in all these measures, but notwithstanding this amicable arrangement with the

BOOK IV.  

---

the Pope, the senate of Rome sent a deputation to the emperor, to demand terms on their part which were absolutely refused, as incompatible with his sovereign dignity; and on the day appointed, the 15th of February, 1155, he entered the city at the head of his guards, and proceeding to the church of St. Peter, was received by Adrian and his cardinals, where the ceremony of placing the crown upon his head was gone through with all due solemnity.

Frederick left the altar, and returned to his camp, while the Pope and his cardinals retired to his palace immediately opposite the church. The citizens of Rome indignant, that the Holy Father should venture to perform the ceremony of the coronation, without their consent, immediately attacked the palace, and the Pope and his conclave would have been sacrificed to their fury, had not Henry the Lion arrived to their support at the head of a chosen body of Germans. The Romans fought with great bravery, and were not subdued till upwards of a thousand had fallen in the streets, and several hundreds were driven into the Tiber, where they also perished. Henry did not lose a single soldier, and the Pope was so

Revolt of the Romans  
quelled by  
Henry the Lion :



## BOOK IV.

Who gains the friend-  
ship of the Pope.

pleased with the valour of the Saxon prince, that he offered to grant him any favour he would ask. Henry availed himself of these sentiments, and succeeded in getting his friend Gerald confirmed in the bishoprick of Oldenburg.

Frederick  
retires  
from Italy.

retires

The discontent, however, that still prevailed in the city of Rome, obliged the Pope to take refuge with the emperor, whom he accompanied to the Ponte Lucano, where the army being unable to support the heat of the dog-days, Frederick determined to retire into Germany; but as his troops were very sickly, he was obliged to march by short stages. As they approached Spoleto, he sent a message to the citizens, to release a Count Guedon, whom they had made a prisoner on his return from Apuleia, but they refused to obey his order; upon which Frederick caused the city to be invested, and having taken it by assault, ordered it to be burnt. He then advanced to the shores of the Adriatic, and having halted for some days at Ancona, to refresh his troops, admitted to an audience the deputies of the patriarch of Jerusalem, who had been sent to complain of the conduct of the Knights of St. John. He gave them letters to the Pope,

and then continued his march towards Bavaria, where he dismissed his army, with the exception of a few companies, that were retained to act as guards.

BOOK IV.

Henry took his leave of the emperor at Ratisbon, and having received the most positive assurances that his claim upon Bavaria would be taken into immediate consideration, he returned to Saxony, and was occupied in arranging the domestic concerns of that Duchy, when he was summoned to attend the marriage of Frederick with Beatrix, the daughter and heiress of Reginald, Count of Burgundy, which was celebrated at Wurtsburg, in 1156.

The Duke of Saxony takes his leave at Ratisbon :

Attends at the emperor's marriage :

A.D. 1156:

Henry's claims were at last allowed, and affairs having been amicably arranged by the emperor with his uncle, Henry of Austria, it was determined that he should be put in possession of the so long disputed sovereignty of Bavaria: the court, therefore, adjourned to Ratisbon, and in a general assembly of the states, the Duke of Austria delivered the seven banners, or symbols of the Duchy, into the hands of the emperor, who transferred them to Henry the Lion. Two of them were returned, and were used by Frederick, in the investiture of his un-

Bavaria is restored to him :

**BOOK IV.** cle, now declared an independent duke, and these territories, with three additional counties, were for ever enfranchised from the dominion of Henry. By this act, the circle of the Duchy was in some measure circumscribed ; but the bishops of the province still attended at Henry's courts, and he held a real or nominal jurisdiction over the marches of the Tyrol, Styria, and Istria, as far as the Adriatic Gulf.

Extent of his dominions at this period :  
A.D. 1157 :

His uncle's states in Italy.

The prosperity of Henry the Lion had now reached its greatest height. His dominions extended from the shores of the Baltic to the Mediterranean sea, and he might justly be esteemed the most opulent prince of the age. His uncle, too, in addition to the Duchy of Spoleto, received about this period, the Marquisate of Tuscany, and principality of Sardinia, and was the acknowledged Lord of the house, or patrimony of the Countess Matilda. These latter states had been greatly dilapidated by the civil wars, but the power of the emperor, and the prudence of Guelph, soon restored them into the form of a well-governed and productive domain.

Henry was occupied in building a new city, which he had named Leonstadt, and in repairing Lubeck, which had been destroyed by fire,

when an embassy arrived from Sweno, King of Denmark, imploring his assistance against the Vandals, who had invaded Holstein, and seized upon most of the Danish islands. He offered the duke a large sum of money, if he would furnish him with a body of troops, and Henry, it is said, received the money, and afterwards, under the pretence that he was obliged to follow the emperor into Italy, refused to send the troops required ; but in acting thus, he was guided more by the advice of Canute, the rival of Sweno, than by his own feelings of honour or justice.

BOOK IV.

Henry applied to by the King of Denmark:

A contest for the crown of Denmark, between Canute VIII. and Sweno IV., both great grandsons of Sweno III. had been carried on for nine years. Both had taken the title of King, and both had held sovereign power, in one or other of the divided provinces of that kingdom : Walde-  
mar, Duke of Schlesswig, a great grandson also of the third Sweno, was a third candidate ; the country, therefore, ruined by civil wars, became an easy prey to its neighbours, while the pirates of the North seas took and plundered the islands at their pleasure.

Contest for the crown of that kingdom :

Waldemar and Canute, from some treachery on the part of Sweno, joined their forces, when

History of that contest :

**BOOK IV.** — they found that the Duke of Saxony would not grant him the support he required, and obliged him to leave the kingdom altogether, and take refuge with his father-in-law, Conrad, Margrave of Misnia. Destitute of means and of arms, he once more had recourse to Henry the Lion, who, convinced of the injustice of his late conduct, took the fugitive under his protection. He sent orders to the Obotrites, and others on the coast, to prepare a fleet, and make a descent on the shores of Denmark, while he entered Jutland, at the head of his Saxons, and their allies, the troops of the Archbishop of Bremen.

Henry protects Sweno, one of the candidates:

War in Denmark continued.

Henry led his army through the Duchy of Holstein, without allowing the smallest injury to be done to the country or its inhabitants, and hostilities did not commence till he approached Schlesswig, the hereditary patrimony of Waldemar. The city was without provisions, and badly garrisoned, and offered at once to surrender, and to pay a certain sum as a ransom from pillage. The terms were agreed to, but as the vessels in the harbour were not included in the treaty, they were seized upon by the troops; and proved so rich a booty that Sweno

was able to pay the soldiers the whole of their arrears, and to give a large sum to the Duke of Saxony.

Waldemar, collecting all the troops that were left in the kingdom, landed in the north of Jutland, and was joined by the inhabitants, while Canute arriving from Sweden with a large reinforcement, reached Zealand, but was prevented, by a storm, from passing over to the Peninsula. The Duke of Saxony pushing forward, arrived before Rypen, a town situated in a marsh, or rather in the centre of an inland lake, and having taken the inhabitants by surprise, they opened their gates, and received his army. It was his intention to have remained in that city, until the reinforcements under the Archbishop of Bremin had come up; but finding from his spies, that Waldemar was approaching, with the intention of shutting him up in this confined spot, he determined to effect his retreat in time.

Henry invades Jutland:

He communicated his orders to the chiefs of the army, and they were so well executed, that the chronicle quaintly remarks, "The Saxons marched as far in *two days* during this retreat, as they had done in *fifteen*, during their ad-

Is forced to retreat.

BOOK IV. vance." Henry returned to Lower Saxony, where he learnt that the inhabitants of Mecklenburg, in conformity to his orders, had made a descent upon the Island of Funin, which they had pillaged. But Sweno now represented to the duke, that further assistance was not required. The rival princes began to see that if such measures were longer pursued, they would neither have a kingdom nor a people to contend

Treaty of the rival  
princes of Denmark:

for, and they agreed to submit their respective claims to a general assembly of the states of the kingdom. But when the assembly met, Sweno, who knew the generosity of Waldemar, declared that he would be satisfied with the single decision of that prince, and would hold his sentence as binding upon him as the laws of the states could make it. Canute agreed to do the same, and Waldemar, who was thus made the judge in his own cause, and the arbiter, in regard to the pretensions of his rivals, is said to have given sentence in these terms: "I decide that each of us shall retain the kingly rank, and that the kingdom shall be divided, as nature seems already to have divided it, into three equal portions. Jutland shall be one; the islands of Zealand and Funin another; and the

That kingdom divided  
among them:

third shall consist of Scania, and the neighbouring provinces."

BOOK IV.

This sentence was approved of by the princes, and sanctioned by the people, and they having called upon the judge to make his selection, he chose Jutland; the second division was allotted to Sweno, and Canute was content with the third; but Sweno, unwilling to be placed between the two friends, (as Canute and Waldemar were considered,) was allowed to take the third division.

They had scarcely left this assembly of peace and apparent harmony, when Canute was murdered by order of Sweno. The savage, however, did not long survive his victim, and the whole kingdom became united under Waldemar, who reigned in peace for many years.

In 1158, the emperor resolved to return into Italy, that he might have his revenge upon the city of Milan, and others, which during his former campaign, he had been obliged to leave unsubdued, and he directed the army to assemble upon the banks of a lake near Augsburg; while Reginald, his chancellor, and Otho, Count Palatine of Bavaria, were despatched as his commissioners, to pave the way, and to ex-

History of the empire resumed.



**BOOK IV.**     tort from the cities of Italy the oath of allegiance to his government.

Frederick again in Italy :

In entering the kingdom, the ambassadors were well received by the Bishop of Verona, and the inhabitants of that city took the oath without hesitation. From Verona, they passed through Mantua to Cremona, and received from the Archbishops of Ravenna and Milan, and from all the nobles and people of these provinces, the same oath of attachment and fidelity.

Alarm of the Pope :

The Pope was alarmed when he heard of this unanimity in favour of Frederick; and particularly, when he understood that he was about to cross the Alps with a numerous army. He knew that he had given him cause for anger, and was now afraid that he meant to take his

Who sends ambassadors to Frederick :

revenge. He therefore nominated two cardinals to wait upon Frederick, under the pretence of concluding a durable peace, and having communicated their orders to the emperor's commissioners at Modena, they were allowed to proceed on their journey, but on their approach to Bavaria, were taken prisoners, and plundered of all their effects; and not allowed to proceed, until the brother of one of the cardinals took their place in the dungeon, as an hos-

They are plundered in the Tyrol:

BOOK IV.  
—

tage for their ransom. When this matter was represented to Henry the Lion, in whose territory it had occurred, he compelled the barons who had seized the prelates, to set their hostage at liberty, and to make restitution, as well for the injury done to the individuals, as for the indignity shewn to the church.

And released by  
Henry the Lion :

Upon their arrival at the camp of Frederick, the cardinals represented, that at the recommendation of the Duke of Saxony and Bavaria, they had been sent to explain some sentences in the letter of the Pope, which they were sorry to learn had been badly understood, or improperly interpreted. That both the Holy Father and his cardinals were sorry that they should have incurred his displeasure from such a cause, and that they had now the honour to deliver a letter which contained the true sentiments of the Pope in regard to the subject in dispute. This letter when read, was not considered satisfactory ; but the emperor having received the most positive assurances that Adrian did not wish or intend to trench upon the dignities or prerogatives of the empire, he was satisfied, and dismissed them with great presents, and with every promise of his favour and protection.

## BOOK IV.

Who does not accompany the emperor.

Frederick had collected one of the finest armies that ever marched out of Germany, but though Henry the Lion sent his Saxons and Bavarians to join the emperor, he did not take the command of them in person; whether it was, that having gained his object, he was less inclined to court imperial favour, or that, not receiving the command of one of the divisions, he refused to attend, are matters that cannot now be ascertained, but it is certain that Frederick crossed the Alps without being attended by Henry.

Siege of Milan:

As the great object of the emperor in this expedition was to reduce the Milanese to a proper subjection, the chiefs of the city were summoned to appear before him. They came, and offered him a large sum of money, to secure his friendship; but unconditional subjection was what he demanded, and this they absolutely refused. They were therefore put under the ban of the empire, and measures taken to commence the siege. The city of Milan was well fortified, but Frederick had under his command more than a hundred thousand men, and he resolved to starve them into terms, rather than proceed to active hostilities; but the garrison was on the

BOOK IV.  
—

It capitulates.

alert, and made many sallies, by which the imperialists lost a number of men. At last a want of provisions and ammunition compelled them to send out a flag of truce. The consuls and chief men of the city, who accompanied this flag, were conducted to the emperor, and received kindly, and a council of war being summoned, a treaty was concluded, by which the Milanese assented to the re-establishment of Como and Lodi, which had formerly been destroyed, and agreed that all the male inhabitants of the city, between the ages of fourteen and forty, should take the oath of allegiance to the emperor. They further engaged to build a palace for the emperor within the city, and promised that within a fixed period they would pay to the emperor and empress the sum of nine thousand marks of silver, and as a security for the fulfilment of these conditions, gave three hundred hostages. On the ratification of this treaty, the imperial standard was hoisted on all the public places in Milan, and at Monza Frederick received the crown of Lombardy.

The remainder of the year 1158 was spent by the emperor in regulating the police of the several provinces, and in promulgating laws for their

BOOK IV. fare. The impervious woods of the country, and the deep morasses with which it abounded, rendered pursuit impossible, and they were so active and enterprising, that they often levied heavy contributions upon the isles of Denmark, while they kept the Saxon provinces in their neighbourhood in constant alarm. Niclotus, the king or chief of this people, who fell in the engagement with Henry was the father of three sons: two of them remained faithful to their country and their gods, but the third had become a christian,—was joined with the christian army against his brothers, and employed with the minister of Denmark in arranging the plans for the conquest of their country.

Their princes:

New colonies sent into their country.

On the return of his ambassadors, the King of Denmark detached a body of troops against Rostock, which was taken and pillaged; and Henry having subdued the rest of the province of Mecklenburg and destroyed its inhabitants, colonies were brought from the banks of the Rhine, from Flanders, and from Brabant, and put in possession of the country. The remaining Pagans laid down their arms, and as there was no longer an enemy to war against, Henry returned to the Emperor, who was preparing

to go to war with France, in consequence of a dispute about the election of the Pope.

BOOK IV.

It was at this period, that the virulence of party began seriously to affect the interests of the Christian Church; and between two and three years were spent by Henry in various conferences with the Emperor, and in endeavouring to compromise that schism which had been made by the election of two Popes. The King of Denmark, and indeed all the Princes of Europe, were parties to these conferences. And it was not till towards the beginning of 1164, that Waldemar and the Duke of Saxony returned to their dominions, where they found the Sclavi in rebellion, and making reprisals upon Denmark and Saxony. This obliged the two princes to enter into a new treaty of alliance, in which the first article stated that the eldest son of Waldemar should marry the only daughter of Henry.

A.D. 1163

A.D. 1163.

A.D. 1164.

Henry renews his treaties with Waldemar.

The parties for whom this contract was made, were both infants; but still the ratification of such an intended union was considered as a means of cementing more intimately the friendship of the two families.

BOOK IV.  
 —  
 War against the  
 Sclavii renewed.  
 A.D. 1165.

The war against the Sclavi commenced with unusual cruelties on all sides ; the country was laid waste, the inhabitants destroyed, and in a short time the few that remained of that faithless race were compelled to sue for peace. They submitted to the terms which Henry dictated, and were allowed to exist, while he continued to retain the sovereignty of their country.

Lubeck made a bi-  
 shopric.

At the conclusion of this short war, Henry made Lubeck a bishopric, contrary to the wishes of the people. They refused at first to pay the tithes necessary for the support of the bishop, and threatened to desert the country if such a demand was persisted in. But the strict union that existed between the King of Denmark and the Duke prevented their receiving assistance from that country, and they were obliged to submit to their fate, and provide for the church establishment which was formed in their city.

Henry divorces his  
 first duchess.

Henry the Lion had lived for nearly seventeen years in conjugal happiness with the Princess of Zahringen, but the only issue of that union was Gertrude, the affianced bride of the young Prince of Denmark. The welfare of his extended dominions required, however,

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1166.

that he should have a son to succeed him (of which there were no hopes from his present marriage), and therefore it became necessary to apply for a sentence of divorce, that he might be enabled to marry again. Frederick himself had recommended the measure, and it had been mutually agreed to by all parties. The connexion was dissolved by an imperial decree in 1162, and Henry and his duchess declared at liberty to form a new alliance; but the active operations in which he had been engaged, had hitherto prevented him from making any arrangements for a second marriage. The period, however, had now arrived, when by the complete subjugation of the Slavic provinces, and the peace and prosperity that reigned throughout his dominions, he had leisure to give his attention to this subject. The emperor was consulted, and he decided that Matilda of England, the eldest daughter of Henry II., was the only princess worthy of his friend; and in a diet held at Wurtzburg, about the beginning of 1166, it was decreed that he should send an embassy to England to demand the hand of Matilda for the Duke of Saxony, and another of the younger princesses for his

Arrangements made  
for second marriage:

Matilda of England  
selected:



**BOOK IV.** own son. Reginald, Archbishop of Cologne, the

**A.D. 1166.**

Embassy sent to  
Henry II.

chancellor of the empire, was charged with this mission, and he set out with a splendid train for the court of Henry at Westminster.

Archbishop of Co-  
logne the secret ene-  
my of Henry the  
Lion.

Though Reginald undertook this embassy, he was no friend to the Duke of Saxony, and although, in fulfilment of the orders of the emperor and the German diet, he procured the assent of the King of England to the alliance they proposed, he shewed on his return that he was at heart the enemy of the prince, whose public welfare he had been commanded to support.

Henry II. submitted the demands of the Emperor of Germany to his council, and as both marriages were agreed to, ambassadors were sent to notify the same to Frederick. The contract of marriage with the Duke of Saxony was immediately signed, but as the princess Matilda was not more than eleven years of age, the consummation of the ceremony was delayed. In the meantime Henry was wholly occupied in settling the peace establishment of his Sclavic provinces. He formed three bishoprics in the country of the Obotrites, and the bishops received from his hand the pastoral crosier, a prerogative which Rome

Three bishoprics  
established in Meck-  
lenburg.

had denied to the greatest emperors of Germany. Saxon castles were established in different parts of the country, to afford protection to his vassals and newly-established colonies, and in the neighbourhood of these fortresses many flourishing cities speedily arose, in which the manners and language of the Slavie people were for ever extinguished.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1166.

Near the mouth of the river Trave, there had long existed a small settlement of pirates or fishermen. The convenience of the harbour had led to this settlement, and it had been much frequented by Christian merchants. The unsettled state of the country, however, afforded them little security, and it had been often taken and plundered by the Pagan freebooters. When Henry acquired the dominion of the soil, he paid particular attention to this infant establishment, and under the shadow of his power the city of Lubeck (for so it became) arose on a broad and permanent basis. He made it, as we have seen, the seat of a bishop; he also established a mint and a custom-house, and by the grant of a municipal government, he secured the personal, while he prepared the way for the political, rights of its

Origin of the city of  
Lubeck :

**BOOK IV.** burghers. The ancient name of the harbour was *Wisby*, and by a proclamation addressed to the Danes, Norwegians, Swedes, and Russians, he invited them to frequent it, with an assurance that the ways should be open and secure by land and water. They were told that they should be hospitably entertained, and free to depart; that the imposition of duties should be light and easy; their persons and property guarded from injury; and that in case of death, the effects of every stranger should be carefully preserved for the benefit of his heirs. This judicious policy was rewarded by a rapid and large increase to the wealth and commerce of Lubeck, and before the end of the thirteenth century, it had risen to be the capital of the Hanseatic league, which then numbered in its circle not less than sixty-four cities.

Strangers invited to  
frequent that port.  
A.D. 1166.

The archbishop of  
Cologne begins to  
shew his enmity:

It was while Henry was engaged in maturing these plans for the benefit of his country and the advantage of Europe, that the envious archbishop of Cologne raised a party against him, and endeavoured to excite a revolt among his Saxon vassals. By representing to the nobles that their liberties were

in danger, and that it was their sovereign's intention to deprive them of their fiefs, he prevailed upon many to enter into his views, and under a promise that they would be supported by the princes of the empire, a number of the factious took up arms. The conquered Sclavi laid hold of this which they considered a favourable opportunity to renounce their allegiance. They entered the province of Mecklenburg in considerable force, took and destroyed several villages, while the rebel Saxons, under Louis, Count of Thuringen, laid siege to Eisleben, and Christian, bishop of Oldenburg and the Frieslanders, took and plundered Bremen. The Duke of Saxony was taken by surprise, but collecting his forces with the utmost diligence, he wrote to Prebisilaus, the chief of the Sclavi, to withdraw his troops from Mecklenburg immediately, or expect to receive that punishment which his treachery merited. He gave the command of Lower Saxony to Orlemund, a brave captain, who not only succeeded in keeping that country in good order, but retook Bremen, and abandoned it to pillage, in consequence of the perfidy of its citizens.

Henry himself, at the head of a formidable

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1167.

Excites a civil war  
in Saxony:

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1167.

Which is suppressed  
by Henry.

army entered Thuringen, where his soldiers were allowed to burn and destroy whatever came in their way. He overran the archbishopric of Magdeburg in the same manner, and the country was only saved from destruction by the payment of a large sum of money. The archbishop of Cologne, the author of the war, continued to animate the rebels by fresh promises of support, but the emperor commanding them to lay down their arms, they were compelled to do so.

The King of Denmark excites the Sclavi to rebel :

The King of Denmark, forgetful of existing treaties, or jealous of his powerful neighbour, secretly entered into an agreement with the princes of the Sclavi, and for a time encouraged that people in their rebellion ; but the ancient friendship of the two princes was speedily renewed, and the poor Pagans abandoned to their fate. Wertislaus, their eldest prince, was taken, and sent to Brunswick in chains, where, being discovered in a secret correspondence with his people, and endeavouring to stir up a new war, he was carried back into his own country, and executed on a gibbet. The younger brother, Prebislaus, finding further resistance vain, submitted to the yoke of

They are again reduced.

necessity, and became a Christian with apparent sincerity. Henry, who esteemed his valour, restored to him the greater part of his estates, and the present Grand Duke of Mecklenburg is the descendant of this last branch of the pagan kings of the Obotrites.

BOOK IV.

—  
A.D. 1167.

The Duke of Saxony, the acknowledged sovereign of the country, possessed these provinces, not as a portion of the German empire, but as an absolute and independent conquest which he alone had achieved; and the war being happily finished, he lost no time in returning to his own states, where some of his nobles, and a few of the cities, still refused to receive his orders. The first city which he summoned was Bardewick, a place of strength, and rich from commerce. The burghers refused to admit him or his army, and accompanied their refusal with expressions of disrespect and derision, so irritating, that he took an oath to raze the city to the ground, and put every man to the sword that he found under arms. He drew his army close round the walls, that there might be neither ingress or egress, and told his soldiers that they must either take the place or perish before it. It

BOOK IV. therefore became a war of extermination, as  
—  
A.D. 1167. no prisoners were allowed to be taken. On the third day of the siege, the city was captured by assault, when Henry, too fatally for its poor inhabitants, kept his oath; a few women and children only escaped, while the fire and the sword destroyed the rest. The destruction of

Bardewick destroyed.

Bardewick was thus completed, when Luneburg rose upon its ruins. But the emperor having again commanded the Saxons to submit to their sovereign, and declared himself ready to hear and determine any complaints they might have to make against his government, they all laid down their arms, except Wittekind, Count of Asseburg, who had been imprisoned by Henry and bound in chains, and had sworn never to forget or forgive that insult. He, therefore, shut himself up in his castle, which was considered impregnable, and when an opportunity offered, he sallied forth, and carried off the produce of the neighbouring counties. Henry, having no other enemy to contend with, advanced against the castle of Asseburg, which was built upon a rock, and where he soon found the battering ram was of little avail. He therefore sent to Goslar







*Portrait of Matilda*

MATILDA,

*Daughter of George III.*

DUCHESS OF BAVARIA & SAXONY:

*Portrait of Matilda, Duchess of Bavaria & Saxony, by Sir John Smith.*

*Portrait of Matilda, Duchess of Bavaria & Saxony, by Sir John Smith.*

*Portrait of Matilda, Duchess of Bavaria & Saxony, by Sir John Smith.*

for a body of miners from the Hartz, and driving a shaft under the foundation, discovered the source of the spring which supplied the garrison with water. It was drawn off, and the besieged were soon compelled to surrender. The soldiers were allowed to return to their homes, but the Count was carried a prisoner to Brunswick.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1168.

The country being once more at peace, and enjoying prosperity, Henry began to make arrangements for the completion of his marriage with Matilda of England. A splendid embassy was sent to the court of Henry, then in Normandy, to receive and conduct the bride to Saxony. When the princess and her train reached the small town of Minden, on the Werra, about the end of February, the Duke was waiting to receive her, and the marriage ceremony was performed in the church of St. Gregory at that place. Matilda brought with her an ample dower, which had been provided by Queen Eleanor, during the period of her daughter's betrothment. And on the next day, after the ceremony had been performed, she was conducted to Brunswick, where the festivities of the court were kept up with great

The Princess Matilda arrives in Germany.

Celebration of the marriage.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1168.

interest and much splendour for a long time. Matilda was still only in her twelfth year, having been born, according to the record, in 1156.

The death of the young Prince of Spoleto, which occurred about the period of this marriage, had opened an additional source of wealth and extent of dominion to the Duke of Saxony, for as the only son of the elder brother, he might now be justly considered his uncle's heir. Guelph indeed, on the death of his son, made a will in favour of his nephew; but he constituted him the heir of his extensive domains, upon condition that he should pay down a certain sum of money. The besetting sin of the Duke of Saxony, unfortunately, was avarice, and in the hope that his uncle, then advanced in years, would speedily pay the debt of nature, he neglected to fulfil his part of the contract. The aged prince saw his motives, and became offended; his will was cancelled, and the reversion of his states was made over to the emperor, the son of his eldest sister, and also his nephew. Henry, when too late, saw his error, but there was no recalling the past, and this transaction

Henry loses the favour of his uncle.

was the first cause of enmity between him and Frederick.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1169.

The year 1169 was fertile in Italian intrigues, from the continued schism in the church, and the existence of two Popes. Many of the Lombard cities revolted, and formed a league among themselves to prevent the entrance of the Emperor into that kingdom, and as Frederick was in no condition to reduce this league by force of arms, he sent ambassadors to negotiate with that Pope whose power he considered the best established. During these negotiations in the South, the restless Sclavi, who were still dissatisfied with their condition, began to make war upon the kingdom of Denmark in the North, and in this war they were supported by Henry the Lion, who had quarrelled with Waldemar, and made it a pretext for raising an army. But the only advantage which he or his allies gained, was the capture of Stetin, and as he had other views than the prosecution of this war, he soon consented to a truce, and gave directions that the army he had raised should prepare for a journey to the Holy Land.

Lombardy revolts  
against the emperor.

Henry leads an army  
to the Holy Land:

At this period the Christians in Palestine

## BOOK IV.

---

A.D. 1170.

were in a state of great danger and distress. Their little army was hemmed in on all sides by the forces of Noradin and Saladin, two of the most celebrated of the Mahometan rulers, and they had sent the most pressing demands to the Emperor for support, and equally sought aid from all the princes in Europe. But except the Duke of Saxony and Bavaria, no one seemed disposed to risk any thing in their defence. After spending sometime in taking the necessary measures for the good government of the country during his absence, and after having renewed his alliance with Denmark, he prevailed upon the greater part of his Saxon nobility to accompany him in the expedition he had planned for the assistance of their brethren in the east. The army was accordingly directed to assemble at Ratisbon, in February, 1171, where, on his arrival, he found the Bavarian nobles equally ready to join his standard. The emperor sent the Bishop of Worms to accompany him, as an accredited ambassador to the Greek court, which gave great satisfaction, as it in some measure secured him a favourable reception from the sovereign of the east.

The whole of his arrangements were completed, when, the army commenced its march; and in passing through Austria, he had an interview with the duke, his father-in law. Their former quarrels seemed altogether forgotten, and they mingled their tears at the tomb of a mother and a wife. When he arrived at Vienna, he found a numerous flotilla already collected on the Danube, in which he embarked with his nobles, and sailed for Strigonia. The Duke of Austria accompanied him to this place, where he took his leave. But, while at Strigonia, Henry learnt that the King of Hungary had been carried off by poison, a circumstance that gave him great uneasiness, as it might have interrupted his passage through that country; but the archbishop was his friend, and proper measures were taken to ensure the safety of his army, and facilitate their transport through the states of that kingdom.

After several days of a prosperous voyage down the Danube, in which his progress was regulated by the march of his army along its banks, the vessel in which he was embarked was carried by the current against a rock, and sunk, and Henry would have perished, had not

BOOK IV.

A.D 1171.

His march:

**BOOK IV.** a small boat fortunately come to his assistance.  
 ———  
**A.D. 1171.** This accident obliged him to continue the rest of his journey by land. In his march from Belgrade to Nissa, he was often attacked in the morasses of Servia and Bulgaria, by the wild inhabitants of these districts, but they were easily repelled, and his march was continued without making any attempt at retaliation, or his army manifesting any desire for revenge.

Arrives at Constantinople:

From Nissa, their route lay through a civilized and friendly country, and on his arrival at Constantinople, he was received by the Emperor Manuel with great magnificence, and treated in every respect as the equal of kings, and a fleet was prepared to convey the Saxon crusaders from Constantinople to the Port of St. Jean d'Acre. In this passage, they were scattered by a severe tempest, but at last reached the haven, without any loss. Here, the duke learnt that the death of Noradin, Sultan of Egypt, had enabled the Christians to obtain a peace, and that his aid was no longer necessary to maintain the cause of the cross: nevertheless

And reaches Jerusalem:

he advanced with his army to the Holy city, which, after a few days, they reached in safety.

Henry visited the Holy Sepulchre, and all

the usual places of devotion in the city and country. The churches were adorned with silver offerings from his rich mines of the Harz, and he presented the templars with a thousand marks for the service of their perpetual crusades. His presence, however, was no longer necessary in Palestine, and having completed his pilgrimage, he prepared for his return to Saxony.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1172.

Returns to Germany:

At Iconium he was received by the Sultan, Kilidge, Arslan II., as a friend and relation. His mother was of German extraction, and he claimed an affinity with the House of Saxony. Fifteen hundred Arabian steeds were presented by this prince to the duke and his suite, besides thirty superbly mounted, with six camels, and two leopards, that were destined for Henry's own use.

Receives a present  
from the Sultan of  
Iconium:

On leaving Iconium he followed the sea-coast of Syria to the northward, and the vessels of the Prince of Antioch conveyed him from the harbour of Seleucia, to the river Tarsus in Cilicia, and from thence to Constantinople; his march intersected, in a diagonal line, the whole extent of Asia Minor. Manuel received the Saxons again with open arms, and presented



**BOOK IV.** to Henry fourteen mules laden with gold,  
 — silver, and precious vessels. But he refused to  
**A.D. 1172.**

And from the Em-  
 peror of the East:

accept of so munificent a present, and would only receive a few diamonds, and some holy relics with which he might adorn the churches of Germany.

After some days spent in viewing the wonders of the eastern capital, he took leave of the emperor, and passing through Hungary, arrived  
**Arrives at Ratisbon:** at his palace in Ratisbon, in good health, and with the loss only of Conrad, Bishop of Lubeck, and the Abbot of Luneburg, who had died from fatigue, during the march to Jerusalem.

Henry was absent about twelve months, and on his return he found his duchess in health, his servants faithful, and his enemies silent. His dominions were in a prosperous state, and his name was become more illustrious than ever.

The whole German empire was, at this time, in a state of unusual tranquillity, and Henry, as a mark of his gratitude to God for the prosperity which he enjoyed, commenced the  
**Commences building the Church of St. Blase, at Brunswick.** building of a magnificent cathedral at Brunswick. He caused the old churches of St. Peter and St. Paul, which stood near the Castle of

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1172.

Dankwarderode, and which were supposed to have been built in 868, by the founder of the castle, (a Duke Dankward,) to be pulled down, and on the ground which they had occupied; he laid the foundation of his new and more splendid edifice. The building was not completed for several years, but when finished, it was dedicated to St. Blase and St. John, the apostles of Brunswick; the relics which he had brought from the Holy Land were carefully deposited in its sanctuary; and notwithstanding the many changes and revolutions that have taken place in the ages that have elapsed since this pilgrimage of Henry the Lion, the Church of St. Blase stands a proud monument of his piety and beneficence, and many of the relics, which were then considered so valuable, are still in existence.

But though the German provinces were enjoying comparative repose, a storm was arising in the South, which was soon to involve the whole of Europe.

Alexander the Pope, or, as many of the Christian states considered him, the anti-Pope, had entered into a treaty with the Emperor Manuel, who was desirous of regaining the sovereignty

Disturbances in Italy:

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1172.

of Italy, and who had promised not only to acknowledge Alexander, but to forward the re-union of the Greek and Latin churches, if he would support his interests ; and the Lombard cities, under the sanction of that treaty, had formed a league against Frederick. Their army was headed by the Marquis of Montferrat, the son-in-law of the Greek emperor, and it seemed probable that the whole of the Italian provinces would revolt to the dominion of the Greeks. A diet of the empire was therefore called at Worms, where it was determined that troops should be levied, and mo-

The emperor raises  
an army to suppress  
these disturbances :

ney raised to enable Frederick to advance in person into Italy, to suppress their rebellion ; while in the meantime Christian, Archbishop of Mentz, and Chancellor of the empire, was detached with a small force to support those cities that still remained faithful, and prevent others from joining the league. But instead of accomplishing the object which Frederick had in view, the appearance of so trifling a force among the Italians hastened in some measure their general defection, and led many cities which had hitherto remained neuter to declare against him. It consequently became

A.D. 1173.

necessary to hasten his preparations, and he informed the several states, that he would expect their contingents at Ratisbon against the month of May.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1174.

Accordingly, at the time appointed, a considerable force was assembled, and the emperor placing himself at their head, passed Mount Cenis, and laid siege to Laza, which, after a vigorous resistance, he took and destroyed. Asti, Tortona, Cremona, and Como, fearing a similar fate, returned to their allegiance, and opened their gates at his approach. But with the view of hastening the entire conquest of the revolted cities, he directed the Archbishop of Mentz to besiege Bologna, while with the main body of the army he advanced against Alexandria.

Marches into Italy :

Besieges Alexan-  
dria:

This city was well fortified, and capable of making a long defence, but the emperor having made his arrangements, and prepared his engines, he began to attack it towards the end of September, and boasted that he would be in possession of it in a few days. The besieged however were on the alert, and contrived to destroy his machines as soon as they were advanced against the walls. As they did this re-

## BOOK IV.

---

A.D. 1174.

peatedly, Frederick was irritated, and caused it to be intimated to the garrison, that unless they submitted immediately, he would order the whole of the inhabitants to be massacred, even to the women and children, as soon as the place should be taken. But the governor replied, that the emperor might give what orders he pleased, as the garrison would consider themselves dishonoured, and unworthy of the name of soldiers, if they delivered up the city to its enemy, while they were yet in a condition to defend it. The siege, therefore, was continued ; but about the middle of October, excessive rains began to incommode the besiegers, and the overflowing of the River Tanar inundated their camp. Still nothing could induce him to withdraw from before Alexandria: nevertheless, as he despaired of taking it by assault, he resolved to convert the siege into a blockade, and having withdrawn his troops to some distance, he made preparations for passing the winter with them in the field. He calculated upon preventing the inhabitants from receiving supplies, and trusted that famine would at last compel them to offer terms. But the blockade was not maintained

with sufficient strictness ; provisions were constantly smuggled into the city, and the other places in Lombardy that were in rebellion had time to organize a force sufficient to take the field in support of their ally. The army of the confederates took up a position at Chiastera, with a view of watching the movements of the imperialists, where Frederick, marching out to dislodge them, was, after a sanguinary conflict, obliged to retreat to his entrenchments before Alexandria. The greater part of his camp equipment and instruments of war were left in the hands of the rebels, who advanced upon Pavia, which they pillaged, and afterwards destroyed. As the spring advanced, however, the siege was pushed with great energy. He had a mine dug under the walls, by which he intended to have sent two hundred men into the city, where they were to create an alarm, while his troops assaulted the walls from without. But the garrison had notice of his intentions ; the place where the mine was to open was watched, and when the party destined for this secret manoeuvre expected to have made their way above ground without being discovered, they were set upon, driven back,

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1175.

The Lombard allies  
form a league :

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1175.

The emperor defeated before Alexandria.

and the mouth of the pit filled up. The garrison at the same time made a sortie, which was equally unexpected, and the Germans were thrown into confusion, and put to flight. Frederick, beaten and dispirited, retired upon Chiastera; but not judging this a place of safety, he crossed the Po, and encamped at Montebello, where he halted for a time, that he might settle matters between the cities of Genoa and Lucca, who had been engaged in a petty warfare for more than twelve months.

The Pope was so well pleased, when he learnt the success of the Alexandrians, that as a reward for their fidelity to the church, he erected the city into a bishopric; and to punish Pavia, for its adherence to the emperor, he deprived its bishop of the *Pallium*, and took away his privilege of having a cross borne before him.

The Germans by this time had become tired of the war, and they began to leave the army in considerable numbers; but what chiefly affected the emperor, was an order issued by Henry the Lion, for his troops to prepare to return to Saxony. When Frederick heard of this order, he sought the duke at Chiavenna near to Como, and representing in forcible terms the em-

barrassed state of his affairs in Italy, and the ruin that must follow, if he was thus deserted, he is said to have thrown himself on his knees, and with tears to have implored the duke to remain with him. But Henry cared little for Frederick's ruin. The loss of his uncle's patrimony, and other injuries, still rankled in his bosom, and he would not be prevailed upon to rescind his order. And when with secret joy and apparent confusion, he raised the emperor from his humble posture, one of his nobles whispered rather audibly in his ear, that he ought to allow the imperial crown to lie at his feet, as it must speedily be placed on his head.

The empress, who was a witness of this scene, and heard the remark of the Saxon courtier which she considered so degrading to her husband, desired him, with all the bitterness of female passion, to remember what had passed, and added, "God will remember it one day." After this interview, the emperor and Henry parted: the latter, offering some vague professions of loyalty, proceeded on his way to Germany, while the other with a mind thirsting for revenge, returned to his deserted camp.

Under existing circumstances, Frederick had

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1175.

Henry the Lion  
leaves the army:—  
His interview with  
Frederick.



## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1175.

The emperor obliged  
to treat with the  
Pope:

no other resource, but to treat with the leaguers, and the consuls of Cremona, a neutral city, became his mediators. For some time, however, the measures taken to bring about a peace proved ineffectual; and judging it best to treat with arms in his hand, he caused a detachment of the army to advance in the direction of Alexandria, for the purpose of destroying its territory, and they continued to harass that country, until the approach of winter obliged them to retire to Pavia.

A.D. 1176.

While these affairs were transacting with the emperor, the army under the Archbishop of Mentz, had not been idle; that active prelate had taken and destroyed a great number of cities and castles in the march of Ancona: had conquered the city of Spoleto, and the whole of that duchy, and was now in quiet possession of these provinces.

And with the King  
of Sicily:

Frederick wrote, to desire he would wait upon William, King of Sicily, and try to negotiate a treaty of peace with that prince; and in the event of its being accomplished, he was to offer to the king the hand of one of his daughters. Frederick directed him to make this offer, from a dread that the Pope would prevail

upon William to join the Lombard league, and therefore imagined that by such an alliance he would secure him to his interests. William felt no objection, on his own part, to the proposed alliance; but, afraid of giving offence to the Ruler of the Church, he was under the necessity of refusing the hand that was offered to him. From Pavia, Frederick also wrote to the princes of the empire, imploring them to send reinforcements to his army, and the Archbishop of Cologne and others, exerting themselves with great activity, a very considerable force was raised, and sent into Italy by the month of May. They enabled him to commence the campaign in the territory of the Milanese, where the Lombards, without waiting for their allies, had made preparations to attack the imperialists. Frederick received advice of their preparations, and advanced with great diligence, that he might surprise them before they were completed. This advance he commenced during the night, and it was so harassing to his troops, who had to pass through a thick forest during a heavy rain, which added so much to the darkness that they at last lost their way, and were obliged to halt, in order to collect their

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1176.

War renewed.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1178.

scattered parties: fires were lighted, and before one of these fires, the emperor passed the night among the common soldiers, exposed like themselves to all the inclemency of the weather.

At the break of day, the march was resumed, and they shortly afterwards came upon a wood, where the enemy lay concealed. They here in their turn attempted to surprise Frederick, but as his army marched in order of battle, he caused them to charge, and the Lombard cavalry were put to the rout. The Milanese infantry, with some men at arms, who had charge of their principal standard, getting into confusion, from the retreat of the cavalry, the emperor directed his attention to that body, and caused an attack to be made upon it. But his troops were so well received, that the cavalry had time to rally, and returning to the support of their infantry, the imperialists were obliged to give way, and flying without order, they were pursued to the banks of the Po, where many were taken prisoners, and a great number lost their lives in attempting to cross that river. The whole of the baggage of Frederick fell into the hands of the victors, and as he was the last to give way, he was often

Frederick compelled  
to retreat:

in great danger. His horse was killed under him, and what added to the consternation of his discomfitted troops, a report was spread that he had himself fallen. He was saved, however, by the darkness of the succeeding night, and having concealed himself in the woods for several days, at last found his way to Pavia, when all hopes of his safety had been abandoned.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1176.

This victory, so fatal to the empire, was most advantageous to the cause of the church. It secured the independence of the Italian cities, and put an end to the dominion of the German emperors in that kingdom. Frederick, who had hitherto been accustomed to meet with success in all his undertakings, and who had always returned as a conqueror to his native kingdom, felt this disgrace most acutely; but he was forced to yield to circumstances, and compelled to abandon that party which he had supported with so much haughtiness. It may perhaps be said, that he had become tired of fighting the battles of an anti-Pope, and that being no less distinguished as a politician than he was as a warrior, he judged that the time had arrived when he could permit himself to be reconciled to Alexander III. But his jealousy of

Again treats for  
peace.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1178.

Henry the Lion, whose power in Germany he had every reason to dread, was perhaps the chief inducement for him to waive minor considerations, and submit to the spiritual government of a Pope, who had already been acknowledged in France, in Spain, and in England.

The schism in the church had existed for more than sixteen years, and the troubles of that period had only tended to fix Alexander the more firmly on his throne. Frederick, indeed, had long been the only potentate who continued to oppose him, and as he was now resolved to make peace on any terms, he

Frederick sends an embassy to the Pope.

despatched an embassy, consisting of the archbishops of Magdeburg and Mentz, the bishop of Worms and others, who had no sooner received a safe conduct than they proceeded to Anagni, where Alexander resided. They arrived about the end of October, and immediately demanded an audience of the conclave, where producing their instructions, they expressed the sincere desire of their master to effect a firm and lasting peace between the holy see and the empire. They found it rather a difficult matter to treat with an assembly which consisted of such a number of indi-

viduals with different interests; but by giving every assurance that all who had adhered to the Pope should be protected in their persons and estates, that the prefecture of Rome and the estates of the Countess Matilda should be restored to the Holy Father, and that the cardinals should have liberty to visit Venice and Ravenna, and all other places, with a general safe conduct for the space of three months, notwithstanding a continuance of the war, their propositions were received, and they returned to the emperor with a promise that the negotiation should be continued.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1177.

Their promises.

It would be foreign to the object of this history to enter into the discussions that led to the treaty of peace which was settled and signed at Venice, where Frederick and Alexander met, and continued together for several weeks in the months of July and August, 1177; we must therefore return to Henry the Lion, who after parting with the emperor proceeded to Bavaria, and spent his time in arranging the affairs of that duchy, and in laying the foundation of the city of Munich. He then advanced to Saxony, where some serious dis-

Peace concluded.

Henry the Lion in Saxony.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1177.

His fears in regard  
to the emperor.

Renews his friend-  
ship with Denmark.

turbances among his refractory nobles had called for his immediate attention. As he continued, however, to watch the progress of events in Italy, he saw, from the eagerness with which the emperor proceeded to bring matters to a close, that there was a necessity for his being upon his guard when that prince should return to Germany. He knew that he had incurred the hatred of Frederick, and that as soon as his affairs in Italy could be arranged, there was reason to dread the effects of that hatred. He therefore sought to renew his alliance with the King of Denmark, and for that purpose solicited a personal interview with Waldemar. They met on a bridge on the river Eyder, where they swore to their former treaties, and agreed to support each other against all enemies; but there was a degree of haughtiness and etiquette kept up which seemed little in accordance with their professions of friendship.

The emperor was not the only enemy that Henry had to fear. The prelates, whom he had displaced during the schism in the church, had also made their peace with the Pope, and been restored to their sees: they therefore

returned and demanded to be put in possession ; but the Duke who had been no party to that treaty upon which their claims were founded refused to sacrifice his own friends, by acceding to their demands. They therefore began to levy troops with a determination to recover their churches by force of arms.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1177.

Return of the deposed bishops.

Ulrich, the former bishop of Halberstadt, encouraged by the Archbishop of Magdeburg, and supported by a number of lay nobles, was the first to take the field. He entered the bishopric at the head of a considerable army, and taking the city by surprise, compelled Geron, the prelate appointed by Henry, to leave the palace. The Duke of Saxony hastened to the assistance of his friend, and after destroying the castle of Hornberg, threatened to treat Ulrich as a traitor to the state, if he persisted in disturbing the peace of the country. But the bishop was too well supported to pay any attention to these threats, and Henry had no sooner removed his army, than he appeared again in the city, and commenced rebuilding the walls of his castle. The duke sent a strong detachment to disperse the workmen, but it was intercepted by the army of the bishop, and

In the bishopric of Halberstadt,



## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1178.

cut to pieces, and the Count of Holstein, who commanded, was killed.

The Archbishop of Cologne, instigated, as was supposed, by the emperor, began at this time to insist upon some claims which he had, or pretended to have, to the province of Westphalia, and his party raised the standard of rebellion in that province. This party the archbishop, on his return from Italy, headed in person, and advancing as far as the Weser, plundered and laid waste the country; while Henry, who was afraid of further irritating the emperor, by attacking his personal friend, remained an inactive spectator of the ravages they committed. He proceeded however to Spires, where Frederick had established his court, and made a formal complaint of the conduct of the archbishop; but the emperor listened to his representations with a cold indifference, that too evidently betrayed his personal feelings; and instead of affording him redress, he directed the matter to be brought before the general diet, which he had ordered to assemble at Worms on the 13th of January, and assured him that it should then be properly investigated.

And in Westphalia.

Henry proceeds to Spires, to complain of the archbishop of Cologne :

His reception :

His complaints referred to the general diet, which he does not attend :

The assembly met on the day appointed, but as Henry the Lion did not appear in his place, the representations which he had made to Frederick were never brought forward. On the contrary, his enemies, who were at their post, had in compliance with what they knew to be the secret wishes of the emperor, prepared a long list of accusations against him. The nobles of Saxony complained that he had invaded their rights, and deprived them of many of their ancient privileges. The bishops stated that they had been driven from their churches, and that their sees were filled by his creatures, who had been compelled to swear allegiance to his person. The vassals complained that he had destroyed their villages, and seized their effects, and above all it was boldly asserted that, through his connivance, the province of Westphalia had been laid waste and destroyed.

The Emperor lent a willing ear to all these complaints, and they were registered in the diet; but though he had every wish to give effect to the reprisals that were demanded, he judged it prudent to conceal his intentions, and he proposed that another opportunity should be

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1178.

Complaints raised  
against him :

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1178.

He is summoned a second time to attend the diet:

Refuses to attend ;

But agrees to answer to the emperor :

afforded to the duke to meet his accusers, and prove his innocence. He was therefore summoned to attend the next diet, which was ordered to meet at Magdeburg. But Henry, who knew that under the favour which was shewn them by the emperor, his enemies would increase in number, and perhaps imagining too that his life would not be secure, he allowed the summons to remain unnoticed. His absence from this second diet was therefore construed as manifesting a contempt for the empire, as well as disrespect to the emperor, and many additional delinquencies were laid to his charge. The Margrave of Lusace accused him of having encouraged the Sclavi to destroy his country, and offered to make good his charge at the point of his sword. A formal and regular challenge was transmitted to Henry; but he sent for answer, that the Margrave was too much his inferior in rank for them to meet in a personal conflict, and that although he refused to rebut the indefinite and frivolous complaints of his subjects in an assembly where his enemies formed the majority, he would meet his accusers face to face before the emperor, and was ready to prove the falsehood of the

accusations that had been made against him. He therefore demanded an interview, that he might prove his innocence. Frederick agreed to a meeting, and desired his presence at Hal-desleben. They accordingly met, and spent some days together, and were on the point of being reconciled; but as something was due to appearances, and it was requisite that some atonement should be made to what was considered the insulted dignity of the empire, whose summons Henry had disregarded, Frederick required that a sum of money should be paid as a fine for his disobedience. That sum was fixed at five thousand marks of silver, and though a trifle when the wealth of Saxony and Bavaria were to be taken into consideration, he refused to pay it, and consequently they separated more at enmity than they had ever been.

Henry returned to Saxony, and was allowed some time to reflect on the proposition that had been made to him. But calculating upon the support of Denmark, he remained fixed in his determination to reject it. He met Waldemar a second time on the Eyder, and received from him a promise of whatever assistance he might require, provided he would re-

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1178.

They meet:

A fine imposed,

Which Henry refuses to pay, and they part in anger.

Henry has an interview with the King of Denmark:

BOOK IV. fund the church property he had seized, and  
 A.D. 1178. restore to the clergy the lands of which he had  
 deprived them. But here again the avarice of  
 Henry (for it can be called by no other name)  
 so completely blinded him to his own interest,

Loses his support. that he rejected the offered terms, and forfeited  
 the friendship of his ancient and natural ally.  
 He prevailed upon Waldemar, however, to keep  
 their difference a secret, because he was afraid  
 that when the Saxons came to know that they  
 were to be left without support, they might re-  
 fuse to obey his commands, or not venture to  
 contend against the united powers of the empire.

As soon as the time allowed him to decide  
 on the emperor's proposition had elapsed, he  
 Henry summoned a was again summoned to attend a diet of the  
 third time, and still empire. But, though it assembled at Goslar,  
 refuses to attend : within the boundaries of his own dominions,  
 he still refused to make his appearance, or to  
 render any account of his conduct. He was  
 therefore declared a rebel to the state, and the  
 Imperial ban pro- imperial ban with all due solemnity pronounced  
 nounced against him: against him.

This sentence placed Henry without the  
 pale of the laws, and his person and his states  
 were at the mercy of every one who had the

power of injuring them. The archbishop of Cologne, his ancient enemy, had the ban promulgated throughout Saxony, and at his command Godfrey, Duke of Brabant; Philip, Count of Flanders; Otho, Count of Guelders; Thierry, Lord of Cleves; William of Juliers, with the Lords of Bonn, Senef, Berg, and many others, levied forces, and joining the archbishop, entered Westphalia, which they overran and laid waste, before he was aware of their intentions.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1178.

His states invaded

Ulrich of Halberstadt had recourse to spiritual arms. He laid the churches in his diocese under an interdict, and fulminated a sentence of excommunication against Henry; but the vassals of the Duke were not to be moved by any such censures. They refused to pay tithes or grant subsidies, until the interdict was taken off, and the sentence of excommunication recalled. Henry, however, dreaded the censures of the church more than the combined powers of the empire, and therefore sought the bishop, and made his peace with him.

Wickman, archbishop of Magdeburg, Duke Bernard of Thuringen, the Landgrave of Hesse, with the Count Palatine of the Rhine, followed the example of the Archbishop of Cologne, and

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1178.

took the field against their sovereign Wickman; with the assistance of the troops of Cologne, penetrated into what was called Eastphalia, and took a number of fortified places, while the Duke of Saxony was engaged with his rebellious subjects in Thuringen. But as he was desirous of bringing matters to an issue in this quarter, he allowed the princes to unite their forces, with the view of inducing them to hazard a general action, and at last he succeeded in giving them confidence to do so.

His success in Thuringen,

Their army kept its ground as he advanced, and although the day was far spent when he came in contact with them, he was afraid of giving them any further time for decision, and instantly ordered the attack to commence. The troops of Hesse and Thuringen, who formed the enemy's advanced guard, were speedily overwhelmed and dispersed; but those of the Count Palatine kept their ground, and fought with great bravery, until darkness separated them. They found, however, that they would not be able to renew the contest, and determined to retreat during the night. Henry suspected this, and sent out a strong party of his reserve to intercept them; but the officer

who commanded the detachment lost his way, and was unable to execute his orders. When this was discovered, the duke advanced in person, overtook the fugitives, and made a great many prisoners. He at last came so close upon the main body of the army, that the Count Palatine was compelled to risk a second action. This was decisive, as both the Count Palatine and the Count of Waldeck were taken prisoners, with upwards of four hundred of their men at arms. Thuringen and Hesse were reduced to obedience, and Duke Bernard and the Landgrave fled to the court of Frederick. From Hesse, Henry directed a part of his army to advance upon Westphalia, where Simon, Count of Tecklen-  
 burg, and Herman of Ravensberg, had been left in command by the Archbishop of Cologne. He gave the command of this expedition to Bernard, Count of Lipstadt, an officer whose fidelity and judgment had often been proved; and he directed Adolphus, Count of Schaumburg, Guncelin, Count of Swerin, Bernard of Ratzberg, Bernard of Welpen, Wittekind of Reden, with the brothers Ludolph and Welbrand of Ollendorn, all noblemen of distin-

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1179.

And in Westphalia.



BOOK IV.

A.D. 1179.

guished bravery, and all interested in the recovery of their estates which lay in the country occupied by the enemy, to accompany Count Bernard. He remained himself in Thuringen with a strong force, that he might keep that part of the country quiet, and be at hand to support Bavaria in case of its being attacked.

Lipstadt marched first in the direction of Brunswick, where he received a considerable reinforcement from the troops left to protect that city, and then advanced upon Harsfeldt, a strong position in the neighbourhood of Osnaburg, where the Count of Tecklenburg was encamped with the troops under his command. Tecklenburg was reckoned a brave officer and a man of great experience, and when he learnt that Count Lipstadt was approaching, he put his camp into the best possible state of defence. But the Saxons, from their late success, were in high spirits: they were determined to conquer, and though the infantry were galled in their approach by a shower of arrows from the trenches, they kept their ranks, and advancing with a firm step and in solid columns, drove the enemy from every point. The cavalry, who were in re-

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1179.

serve, pursued the fugitives, and by cutting off their retreat, the whole were taken prisoners. The Count of Tecklenburg was sent in chains to the head-quarters of Henry, but the other prisoners were kept, to be disposed of according to circumstances. This was a very important victory to the Duke of Saxony ; yet, if we are to believe the chronicles of the day, its importance was entirely lost sight of, when the very minor concern, the ransom of the prisoners, was to be taken into account, and for the paltry sum with which the liberty of a few nobles was to be bought, Henry forfeited the support and friendship of one of his best officers. The Count Schaumburg had taken a few prisoners of rank, and expected to put into his own pocket the money he might receive for their ransom ; but as this interfered with the Duke's calculations of gain, he ordered the prisoners to be delivered up to him. Schaumburg replied that he was ready to obey the order, provided he was reimbursed the great expenses he had incurred during the war. Henry would not listen to any compromise, though he knew he was unable to force a compliance with his orders, and therefore, to

Loses the support of  
Count Schaumburg.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1179.

His arms continue  
successful:

punish his vassal, he sent a few troops into Holstein to take possession of the county of Schaumburg, a proceeding which detached that nobleman from his interests for ever. In the meantime Lipstadt, who was faithful to his trust, continued to follow up the advantage he had gained. He attacked and carried several places by assault, and restored the cities of Aremberg, Embden, Hamelin, and others, to their legitimate governors. Münden, which offered considerable resistance, was captured, its inhabitants made prisoners, and its palaces burnt; but in the midst of this victorious career, he received an order to march into Eastphalia, where Ulrich of Halberstadt had again raised the standard of rebellion, and was destroying the towns that adhered to the Duke. Lipstadt, with his usual rapidity, was before the city of Halberstadt before they knew of his approach, and they were so completely taken by surprise, that his army marched into the town without opposition. The inhabitants were in great alarm, and to avoid as they thought the destruction of the city, they extinguished all the fires in their houses—a precaution which led to the very disaster they

were so anxious to prevent. The Saxons, who were obliged to cook their victuals in a deserted ruin, set fire to that building; and the flames being communicated to the houses in the neighbourhood, and spread by the violence of a storm of wind which raged at the same time, the whole city was destroyed, and a great number of the inhabitants lost their lives. The bishop, whose rebellion had been the cause of all this misery, had a very narrow escape for his life, and died soon afterwards from age and infirmity.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1180.

The city of Halberstadt destroyed.

This contest between the Duke of Saxony and the empire began to attract the attention of the powers of Europe, and when Frederick directed an assembly of the states to meet at Wurtzburg, on the sixth of January, 1180, for the purpose of deliberating on the subject, an unusual number of princes and nobles repaired to that city, where they were met by two cardinals who appeared for the Pope, and ambassadors from England and France. At Rome they began to suspect, that if the Emperor succeeded in crushing the power of Saxony, he would find little difficulty in crossing the Alps, and still less in putting an end to

The powers of Europe interfere,

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1180.

Without success.

their existing treaties. France had equally taken the alarm, and was afraid that if Frederick was left without a rival in his own country, he might find leisure to attack his neighbours: both powers, therefore, were desirous that matters should be amicably arranged, and a balance of power maintained in the empire. Henry of England was only anxious for the welfare of his son-in-law, and his ambassador had orders to support the views of the Pope and the King of France.

Frederick's answer  
to the ambassadors.

When the assembly was constituted, Frederick stated to the cardinals and ambassadors, that the Duke of Saxony had been accused of crimes against the empire, and had been summoned three several times to appear and answer to the charges brought against him. That he had obstinately refused to attend, and by declining to submit to the judgment of his peers and his sovereign, he had in a manner acknowledged his guilt. That he had been put under the imperial ban, on account of his contumacy; and his conduct at that moment sufficiently proved, that the sentence which had been pronounced was perfectly just. Yet, from his respect for the Holy Father,

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1180.

A fourth assembly  
decides the fate of  
Henry.

and the kings of England and France, and to obviate every cause of complaint, he said he would call another assembly at Gelnhausen, where Henry might still make his appearance, and enter upon his defence. The adjourned meeting was held at the time appointed, but the proud Duke of Saxony would not yield, and his absence was construed, as manifesting a formal contempt for the emperor and the empire, and sentence was definitively pronounced against him.

“ The princes of the empire,” says Frederick, in this memorable sentence, “ having laid before me their complaints against Henry, Duke of Bavaria and Westphalia, and we having summoned him to appear at three several diets of the empire, where he was accused of having oppressed the churches of God and the nobles of the empire, by seizing upon their fiefs, and curtailing their rights, he not only having failed to appear to answer to these charges, but still continuing to assail the liberties and states of the empire; we, therefore, to repair the injuries which he has done to our states by his usurpations, and to punish him for his treason, and contempt for the

The sentence of the  
emperor:

BOOK IV. imperial authority, do declare him to have  
 A.D. 1180. incurred the ban of the empire, and as a proscribed felon, we take from him the Duchies of Saxony, Bavaria, Angria, and Westphalia, with all the other domains and fiefs that he holds, or may have held, of the empire."

His states divided  
 among his former  
 vassals :

This sentence had been decided upon at Wurtzburg, and its publication only deferred till about the middle of Easter, when they met at Gelnhausen. But it was not enough, to have deprived the duke of his states, the favourites of Frederick had to be rewarded ; and accordingly we find, that his various duchies were split into parts and bestowed upon these favourites. The Archbishop of Cologne received for his portion the greater part of Westphalia, and the Duchy of Angria. Bernard, Count of Anhalt, received Saxony and the remainder of Westphalia ; while Otho of Wittelsbach was rewarded with the Duchy of Bavaria. The county of Stade was given to the Archbishop of Bremen, and fiefs of minor consequence were bestowed on those who were disposed to accept them.

Frederick retained nothing in his own hands, as he wished it to appear that he was guided in his conduct towards his cousin and former

friend by public justice, and not by personal revenge. The princes who were thus endowed with the states of the Duke of Saxony, demanded permission to establish their possession by force of arms; and the emperor, under pretence of yielding to their solicitations, declared that as Henry's obstinacy and treason, were not to be overcome by argument, or remonstrance, he had resolved to declare war against him, and that they were at liberty to levy troops, and to drive him from his territories by force. The emperor assured them of every support, and promised to have an army in the field ready to enter Saxony by the middle of July. In this, he kept his word, and being joined by the levies of the churchmen and lay nobles, his army was more numerous than he had expected.

Saxony was covered with his soldiers, and the Castles of Hertzberg, Lauenburg, Blankenburg, and Regenstein opened their gates at his approach, but Leuterberg hesitated, and might have offered considerable resistance, had the governor not been terrified by the threats of the emperor. He agreed to surrender, upon condition that the fortress should be dismantled. Frederick accepted of the terms, but owing to some

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1181.

War declared against  
him by the emperor ;

Who enters Saxony  
at the head of an  
army :

A.D. 1182.

And subdues the  
country.



## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

equivocation in drawing them up, the original conditions were evaded. This commencement, seemed to promise to Frederick a speedy termination of the war, and he was so delighted with the situation of Hertzberg, which had long been the favourite retreat of Henry IV., and had sustained many a siege during the Saxon wars, that he ordered the fortifications to be enlarged and the castle improved. He spent several weeks in superintending these improvements, before he proceeded to reduce the rest of the country.

The duke was in a great measure abandoned, even by his most attached friends. The imposing aspect of the imperial army, and the union of the whole empire against a single individual, made his cause appear hopeless. The nobles therefore, found it for their interest to follow the stronger party. Saxony was given up to its new rulers, and Henry had to fly to Holstein that he might be in safety.

Bernard becomes popular in Saxony:

The imperial army treated the Saxons with great kindness, and their new-made sovereign shewed himself so anxious for their welfare, that they soon began to experience a favourable change in their condition. The soldiers were

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

strictly prohibited from offering any insult to the defenceless females, while the complaints of the inhabitants were listened to and instantly redressed. By an edict of Frederick, the churchmen, the nobles, and the cities had their privileges restored and confirmed, and we cannot therefore, be surprised, that the people hastened to take the oath of allegiance to Bernard, or that his government was soon established, and his authority acknowledged throughout the whole of the province.

From Saxony, the emperor proceeded to Bavaria, where the new sovereign had also been well received, and where the necessary changes in that government had been effected without the slightest opposition. Otho had received the investiture of Bavaria in the diet at Gelnhausen, but when he met the emperor at Ratisbon, it was thought proper to have the ceremony renewed; and in a full assembly of the states of the duchy, it was again solemnly performed, and the nobles swore allegiance to their duke.

And Otho is favourably received in Bavaria.

Otho of Wisselbach, was brought up at the court of Conrad III., where, at an early age, he had been deposited as an hostage for his father's

History of Otho of Wisselbach:

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

His claim to Bavaria.

Bernard's claim to Saxony.

fidelity. He was one of those courtiers, who obtained the full confidence and friendship of Frederick Barbarossa, and was appointed to the household, when that Prince obtained the crown of Germany. As Count of the Imperial Palace, he executed the important duties of the Justice-general of the empire, and as he had adhered firmly to Frederick, and supported him by his councils, during the time of his greatest distress, it appeared perfectly natural that he should be rewarded with the best jewel in the crown of that prince, whose defection had nearly proved his ruin; but as he claimed a descent from an ancient Royal family of Bavaria, it was alleged, that in obtaining the sovereignty of that state, he had only in some measure regained those rights which in former times belonged to his ancestors.

Bernard's claim to Saxony, if claim it could be called, was still more apparent. He was it is true, the younger son of Albert the Bear, and in promoting him, injustice was done to his elder brothers, but still his grandmother was the daughter of Magnus Billung, and his father had governed the duchy during the disgrace of Henry the Proud. His hereditary right there-

fore, was the same as that upon which Henry the Lion founded his claim.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

While the emperor was occupied in settling Bavaria, the Archbishop of Cologne conducted his army into the centre of Henry's hereditary possessions, and laid siege to Brunswick. That city was strongly fortified, and defended by a brave and faithful garrison, but as the wall was undermined by the besiegers, and a great part of it unfortunately destroyed, and the town was laid open to an assault, the governor judged it prudent to capitulate.

The Archbishop of  
Cologne attacks  
Brunswick.

Henry's little army was unable to keep the field, but notwithstanding that he was abandoned by his nearest relatives and almost all his former friends, his proud spirit was nothing subdued. He withdrew his garrisons from Upper Saxony, and placed them in Lubeck, Stade, and other fortresses on the Elbe, and employed the troops in strengthening the fortifications of these places; and when Frederick joined the archbishop, he found him so well prepared, that with the view of distracting his attention, his army was divided into three separate corps. One of these, under the archbishop, was encamped around Brunswick; another, under Bernard,

Henry fortifies his  
castles on the Elbe.

**BOOK IV.** Duke of Thuringen, which consisted of the troops of Hesse, and the contingent of Brandenburg, took up a position in the neighbourhood of Bardewick and Luneburg, which were held by the Duchess Matilda; while the third,

The Emperor takes the command of the army against him:

Intrigues with the King of Denmark:

commanded by the emperor in person, advanced upon the Elbe, and proceeded to invest Lubeck. When Frederick however, had investigated the strength of this place, and ascertained its resources, he was satisfied, that until he could prevent its communications by sea, there was little chance of his being able to take it, and having no fleet of his own, he began to intrigue with the King of Denmark. Under the pretence of soliciting the hands of two of Waldemar's daughters for his two sons, he sent a splendid embassy to the Danish court. He probably thought that such a proposal could not fail to pave the way for further intercourse, as one of the princes who thus courted the alliance of the Dane, was his acknowledged heir in the empire, and the other was the Sovereign of Swabia. But the courtiers of Waldemar knew that this proposal arose more from hatred to the Duke of Saxony, than from any desire which the emperor had to be con-

ned with the Royal family of Denmark, and they advised the king not to enter into any treaty, unless Henry the Lion was made a party to it. The queen, however, was anxious for the accomplishment of so splendid an alliance for her daughters, and soon overcame their scruples, and prevailed upon the king to receive the ambassadors.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

They were questioned, as to what dowry the emperor would expect with the princesses, but as they had no instructions on that point, he had to be applied to. This led to an interchange of messages between them, which was all that Frederick wanted. He had in the meantime, continued to push his attacks against Lubeck, but had been so frequently repulsed, by Count Tecklenburg, who commanded in the city, that he found he would be obliged to retire, unless he could instantly prevail upon the Danes to furnish him with the fleet he required. The queen was therefore pressed, and being well disposed to second his views, she got Waldemar to send a large flotilla, to cruise off the north of the Trave, to intercept the supplies that were daily sent to Lubeck; and this they succeeded in doing so effectually, that in a short

Besieges Lubeck.

Is assisted by a Danish fleet

BOOK IV. time the garrison was reduced to the greatest  
 A.D. 1182. distress for want of provisions.

Frederick renewed his efforts on the land side, and having built a tower, from which his archers could drive the besieged from their ramparts, he brought forward his battering rams, and at last effected a breach in the wall. The city was thus laid open to an assault, but before he ventured on such a measure he caused it to be intimated to Count Tecklenburg that he was ready to receive him and his officers as friends, if they would surrender without further resistance. If, however, they persisted in compelling him to storm the place, which it was now in his power to do, he assured him that the whole of his garrison should be put to the sword. Tecklenburg replied, that such a threat could have no influence upon his conduct, nor would it induce him to surrender at discretion, a city, the government of which had been intrusted to his honour; that it depended upon the will of his imperial majesty to act as he might think proper when he became master of the place, but he felt that he should be disgraced in the eyes of all honourable men if he yielded to threats while the means of defence were still

Lubeck invited to  
 capitulate :

within his power. At the same time, as he was anxious to save the effusion of human blood, he begged that the bishop might be permitted to wait upon his majesty, to make a proposition, which, if agreed to, would determine his future conduct. The emperor readily assented to this request, and receiving the prelate with great cordiality, conducted him to the interior of his tent, where he was desired to explain the wishes of the citizens. He represented to Frederick, that as the city of Lubeck had been fortified at a great expense by Henry the Lion, with the sole view of protecting its commerce from the almost constant incursions of the barbarous Sclavi, and their rival plunderers the German banditti, it was natural that the citizens should be anxious to preserve the fortifications, upon which indeed the very existence of their city depended, and that they had sworn never to yield while they had an arm left to defend them, unless they obtained permission from the Duke of Saxony to do so. He therefore implored his majesty to allow Count Guncelein to proceed with a safe conduct to the head-quarters of Henry to explain their situation and ascertain his pleasure. Frederick at

BOOK IV.

Refuses, unless Henry is consulted.  
A.D. 1182.



## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

Henry grants them  
permission to offer  
terms:

once granted this demand, when the bishop returned to the city, and Guncelin was despatched to Ratzburg, where the duke resided. Having explained to Henry the distress in which they were placed from a want of provisions,—the fidelity of the garrison,—the enthusiasm of the citizens, and the anxiety of all for his honour and interests, he expressed his desire and that of Count Tecklenburg, that they might be released from their oath, and permitted to enter into terms of capitulation, as the only means of saving the city. Frederick had resolved, he said, upon its complete destruction, if compelled to take it by force of arms; and although his threats had in no way affected the courage of the soldiers, or lessened the attachment of the burghers, it became him for the sake of humanity to shew some regard for their welfare, and not to allow them to be wantonly massacred, as from the breach in their walls and the famine within the city, they could not hold out for any length of time. Henry was seriously affected by this representation, the truth of which he knew too well, and as he was unable to afford them the relief their situation required, he directed that the city

should be instantly given up to Frederick, if he would pledge his word to allow the citizens the full enjoyment of their ancient privileges, and grant them the same indulgences that had been given to the inhabitants of Soest.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

When these conditions were reported to the emperor, he pledged his word to fulfil them without hesitation, and the gates of the city were immediately thrown open. But Frederick, whose great object was popularity, had no sooner obtained possession, than he began to court the rich inhabitants by enlarging their individual privileges, and at last completed their happiness, by declaring Lubeck a free imperial city. Tecklenburg and his brave garrison were allowed to march out with all the honours of war, but it is not known whether they joined the service of the emperor, or returned to the Duke of Saxony.

Which are accepted  
by the emperor.

As Frederick owed his success before Lubeck in a great measure to the assistance he had received from the King of Denmark, he sent a deputation of his principal nobility to congratulate Waldemar on the success of their arms, and to invite him to visit his camp. If, however, he made any objection to the distance,

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

The Emperor and  
King of Denmark  
meet.

the ambassadors were commanded to assure him that as the emperor was most anxious to have a personal interview, he was ready to meet him half way. Waldemar was equally anxious for a meeting, and expressed his readiness to proceed at once to the head-quarters of Frederick. Sailing up the Trave, he landed near the camp, and was received by the emperor at the head of the army. The Germans beheld with astonishment the noble air and martial appearance of this northern monarch, whose height was considerably above the ordinary standard, and the soldiers, who judged of his merits from his personal appearance, were frequently heard to exclaim that he was a prince worthy of an imperial crown. Frederick laid aside his robes of state, and walked with him familiarly through the camp, taking care on all occasions to give him the post of honour, and to explain fully whatever appeared new or unusual in the arrangement of his army, or in the form or construction of his warlike instruments. They then parted, and the king returned on board his ship, attended to the water's edge by the same noble escort that had brought him to the camp. Next day Frederick

sent to invite him to a private meeting in a wood near the shore, where they could converse more at ease, and under the pretence of shewing his sons the Danish ships, he sent them with his messengers, and commanded them to express to the king the very great satisfaction which their first meeting had afforded him.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

The two monarchs had several private interviews after their first public conference, and the emperor succeeded completely in gaining the approbation of Waldemar to the measures which he had in view for the total subjugation of the provinces that still adhered to Henry the Lion. The farce of the two marriages was also kept up, though the enormous demand of dowry which was made by Frederick, might have convinced the King of Denmark that they were never seriously intended. With the view of detaching the inhabitants on the north of the Elbe from the interests of the Duke of Saxony, Frederick before he left Lubeck, declared Bugilaus and Casimer (two native princes), sovereigns of the country then known as Vandalia, though by a secret treaty with Waldemar, he had bound himself to give these provinces to

Consult about the  
subjugation of Henry  
the Lion.

BOOK IV. Denmark, as soon as Henry's party was completely conquered.  
 A.D. 1182.

After the capitulation of Lubeck, Henry the Lion shut himself up in Stade, where he had a strong garrison, and from whence, if hardly pressed, he could escape by sea ; but Frederick, instead of advancing against that fortress, withdrew to the neighbourhood of Luneburg, which he had continued to have narrowly watched, though out of respect for the Duchess Matilda, he had prevented it from being attacked. In his isolated situation the duke began to reflect on the hapless state of his affairs, and seeing the little probability which there was of his recovering his states by force of arms, he released Hermon, the brother of the Landgrave of Hesse, who had long been his prisoner, and sent him to request a private interview with the emperor. Frederick assented to his wishes, and they met at Luneburg, where Henry threw himself on his knees and implored the emperor by their former friendship and their near relationship, to restore at least a part of the possessions of which he had been so unjustly deprived. Frederick was affected by his distress and felt inclined to give way ;

Henry takes refuge  
in Stade,

Demands an audience  
of the emperor.

but as he had promised most solemnly to grant no favour to Henry without first consulting the princes of the empire, he referred the matter to a general diet, that he had directed to assemble at Quedlingburg, and he promised to use his best endeavours to try and effect some arrangement in his favour. Henry attended the meeting of the states, but there was so much of angry recrimination among the princes assembled, that Frederick was under the necessity of dissolving them. He called another meeting at Erfurt, which the Duke of Saxony also attended, and endeavoured to prove that all the charges brought against him at that and former diets were false and groundless. But though he succeeded in making a favourable impression upon the emperor and the princes who had no direct interest in his downfall, and convinced them in some measure that he had been harshly and unjustly treated, it was found impossible to make any arrangement at that time. The princes and others who had got possession of his states formed a decided majority in the diet, and they refused to listen to any terms, or to enter into any kind of compromise.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

His affairs to be submitted to a diet at Quedlingburg and Erfurt.

It is found impossible to make any arrangements in his favour.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1183.

Is advised to retire  
from Germany, which  
he consents to do  
for three years.

A.D. 1184.  
The Duke of Sax-  
ony in England.

With a view therefore to gain time, and allow these angry feelings to subside, Frederick recommended to the Duke of Saxony to quit Germany, and upon the promise of the from the emperor and a pledge from the states that his interests should not be neglected, he consented to become a voluntary exile for the space of three years. It was a hard sentence, but he preferred submitting to it rather than give up his just rights ; and when he had been joined by his duchess and his three sons, he departed immediately for the court of the King of England, which was then in Normandy. He was accompanied by a small but faithful train of Saxon nobles, and was received in the most affectionate manner by Henry II. After spending some time together at Rouen, he dismissed his courtiers, and sent the duchess and her children over to England, while he proceeded alone on a religious pilgrimage to the shrine of St. James of Compostello in Spain. From that country he returned by way of France to England, the Palace of Winchester was assigned him as a residence.

The proud spirit of the Guelph was indeed depressed, but it remained unconquered ; and

though he, who had long been esteemed the richest and most powerful prince in Europe, was now an exile in a foreign land, and reduced to live upon another's bounty; the almost certain hope of being restored to his former state, and that at no distant period, was sufficient to support his mind in this adversity. He spent his time in studying the laws and constitution of England, and was honoured with the full confidence and friendship of his illustrious father-in-law.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

To those who have studied the History of England, it may appear superfluous to remark, that the reign of Henry II. was greatly troubled, and the country distracted and harassed by the intrigues of an ambitious priest, and the revengeful feelings of a jealous wife. The murder of Thomas à Becket had removed one source of the misery and annoyance which the king suffered long previous to the arrival of the Duke of Saxony at Winchester; but that foul spirit which had long usurped the place of every better feeling in the bosom of the virtuous Eleanor, was still most active. The tragedy in the bower at Woodstock had but lately been performed, and the body of

State of the kingdom at the period of his arrival. °



## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

Rosamond Gifford was scarcely cold, when Henry the Lion was called upon to act as a mediator between his royal parents and their rebellious offspring.

Review of part of  
Henry II.'s reign.

In 1170 Henry had caused his eldest son to be crowned King of England, but though he gave him the title, he would not permit him to take any share in the government. This made the prince more discontented than he had formerly been, and he was easily persuaded to raise the standard of rebellion. Through their mother's persuasion, Richard and Geoffrey became of their brother's party, which was joined by the factious nobles, that were anxious to throw the country into a state of civil warfare, and to drive Henry from his throne. The queen, it was well known, was the sole cause of the rebellion, and her only object was revenge for the infidelities of her husband; and jealousy had so perverted her understanding that, provided her revenge was satisfied, she cared not though her husband was destroyed and her country ruined. The Kings of France and

Rebellion of his sons

Scotland lent their aid to the rebellious sons of the king, and their party became formidable; but Henry's active mind was able to meet the

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

treason at home, while at the same time he prepared to combat his enemies abroad. The armies of France and Scotland were conquered and humbled, and his sons were compelled to renounce their confederation, and swear obedience to him as their father and sovereign. After the suppression of that first rebellion, the kingdom of England remained in peace for several years; and it was not till about the time that Henry the Lion settled in the country, that the queen had been again roused to madness, and had prevailed upon her sons to combine a second time against their father. Henry, who was aware of their intrigues, consulted with his son-in-law, and by his advice, augmented the maintenance of the young king and his queen, and invested his other sons with large fiefs, for which they were directed to do homage to their elder brother. But Richard, who was Duke of Aquitaine, refused to acknowledge the supremacy of Henry, as that duchy formed no part of the dominion of England, and Geoffrey, though he allowed that Poictou formed a part of Normandy, demurred to taking the oath of allegiance, until he was put in full possession of the sovereignty of the duchy.

Measures recommended by the Duke of Saxony.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

The princes intrigue  
against him.

At last the princes suspected that these measures were only insisted upon by their father that they might be kept in enmity with each other, and they withdrew from the court; and as they believed that the king was guided by the counsel of the Duke of Saxony in the measures he had adopted, they resolved to effect his ruin. They accordingly spread a report that Henry the Lion was a needy adventurer and no true prince, and to put the matter beyond a doubt, they required that he should submit to a test, which however ridiculous it may seem in the present age, was then most firmly credited. "The Lion," they said, "was the king of the forest, and knew a royal prince by instinct; let him then be confronted with this proud Saxon, and it would be shewn that he had no right to the rank which he assumed." The King of England, believing in the infallibility of the proposed ordeal, yielded to the remonstrances of his sons, and when Henry was walking in the court of the palace, directed one of the most ferocious of the royal lions to be let loose upon him. The Duke of Saxony approached the animal without betraying any symptoms of fear, and calling to it in a tone of authority,

Proof of his royal  
descent.

it crouched at his feet, and allowed him to lead it back to its den. From that moment there was no longer any doubt of his princely descent, and his influence with the king continued and increased. It was not in his power however to effect a perfect reconciliation in the family until the untimely end of the young Henry, destroyed that confederation which he had formed with his brothers.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

Though absent and in disgrace, the Duke of Saxony had many friends in Germany, and there were several important places in that country, that remained for a time firm in their allegiance to him, and refused to acknowledge any other authority. The city and county of Stade, had been transferred by the emperor to the see of Bremen, but they continued to hold out long after Henry had left the country, and as the bishop had not a force sufficiently strong to reduce them to subjection, he applied to the Archbishop of Cologne, who sent a powerful army into the county.

Several cities in Saxony, continue faithful to Henry:

The province was soon subdued by that army and as the city was taken by assault, the fortress was destroyed. The conquest of Haldersleben,

Their conquest:

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

And the complete  
subjugation of the  
country.

another place of strength, was not however so easily accomplished. This place, with its territory, had been given to Wickman, Archbishop of Magdeburg, who had besieged it for nearly twelve months, without being able to make the least impression. The Count of Lipstadt, who commanded the Saxons, was so active that he constantly destroyed their trenches, as soon as they were completed, and set fire to their machines, whenever they were prepared to advance against the walls. Bishop Wickman in his despair, had applied also to the Archbishop of Cologne, who sent him four thousand cuirassiers, but Lipstadt, by laying the country under water, kept them at such a distance, that they would never have been able to take the fortress, if it had not been discovered, that by stopping the course of the rivers Selk and Boden, the town might be inundated. Instead, therefore, of carrying on the siege, they employed the troops in raising a strong embankment, which forced the water back upon the town, and at last compelled the garrison to capitulate. The brave Lipstadt was stripped of all his possessions, and the place which he had

so gallantly defended, razed to the foundation. It was the last that held out for the Duke of Saxony.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1182.

Towards the end of this year, the emperor A diet held at Mentz. held a diet at Mentz, where, though the affairs of Italy, principally engaged his attention, the interests of Henry the Lion were not allowed to pass unnoticed. Henry II. sent his ambassadors to watch over those interests, and they insisted on the part of their master, that the diet should restore to the duke, at least a part of his territories.

The emperor was anxious to avoid a rupture The history of Germany: with England. But as it was impossible to remove at once those princes who had got possession of Henry's states, he prevailed upon the diet to dismiss the ambassadors with fair promises, while he, for his own part, assured them that if the duke would remain quietly in England for the time that had been agreed upon, an arrangement would be made, that would be satisfactory to his best friends.

The government of the new Duke of Bavaria had become so popular, that Frederick was already jealous of the power of his former friend, and to prevent his becoming dangerous, it was

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1183.

And division of Henry's states.

intimated to Otho, that the diet had not given him the whole extent of territory that had been held by Henry the Lion. Ratisbon was declared a free imperial city, while the Tyrolese provinces were formed into two separate states, and given a Count Berthold Dandeck, who became Duke of Mérania; and Menhard, Count of Gortz, who was made Prince of the Tyrol; Stiria was also constituted an independent duchy, and given to Ottocar, who had held it as margrave, under Henry.

Death of Otho of Bavaria.

The loss of these provinces, which Otho of Wisselbach had always considered as a part of his acquired sovereignty, diminished very much his zeal for the emperor's interests, and it had such an effect upon his health, that he died soon after the arrangements were completed. His only son was left under the guardianship of his brother the Archbishop of Mentz; and succeeded to Bavaria, as then limited in the extent and number of its provinces.

A.D. 1184.

Frederick attends a council at Verona.

Nothing occurred in the empire with which the affairs of Henry may be said to have been blended till 1184, when Frederick, having resolved to visit Italy, met the Pope at Verona, and assisted at a council, held for the

purpose of suppressing various heresies that had crept into the bosom of the Catholic Church.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1184.

Henry of England, when he heard of this council, despatched ambassadors to Pope Lucius, to engage him to support the cause of his son-in-law; and when Frederick pressed for a favourable decision on any point that involved his own interests, the restoration of Henry the Lion was insisted upon, as a matter which the Pope had very much at heart. But all the favour that Lucius could obtain, was permission for Henry to return to Saxony, with an assurance that the states of Brunswick and Lüneburg, which formed a part of his allodial domains, should be restored to him and left at the disposal of the Duchess Matilda. With regard to the restoration of his other states, the emperor found protection in his promise and oath, which was to do nothing without the consent of the states of the empire; and as he alleged that the time was not yet come, when the question could be discussed with sufficient calmness, he recommended, as the friend of the duke, that it should be further delayed.

The Pope intercedes for Henry,

Who is allowed to return to Germany.

Frederick succeeded in getting his eldest



## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1184.

son Henry crowned King of the Romans at Verona, and he then despatched him into Germany, to quell some petty insurrections, while he remained to complete his own affairs in Italy.

Heracleus, the Patriarch of Jerusalem, with the Masters of the Knights Templars, and of St. John, appeared in the council at Verona, and laid before the Emperor and Pope the distressed and hopeless condition of that city and kingdom. The king, they stated, was in bad health, and unable to act, and the Christians divided among themselves, were oppressed

The Christians in Palestine solicit assistance.

by the victorious Saladin, and in danger of losing all that they possessed in the east, unless they were speedily supported. But the emperor had too much business upon his hands, to pay any attention to these representations; and there appears to have been a combination of unfortunate circumstances at this period, that rendered their applications to the other courts of Europe equally unavailing.

The representations from the East not attended to.

The Pope was at enmity with the citizens of Rome, who had driven him from the city, and seized upon a part of his revenue. The King of Sicily was warring against the Greek emperor, and Philip of France, was too young to under-

take the risk of a crusade. The King of England, indeed, might have led an army to their assistance, but he had too much to dread from the ambition of his son Richard, to venture on leaving his kingdom; and his parliament was opposed to his doing so. All, therefore, that the ambassadors could obtain, was a supply of money, and even that was not great, and they returned to witness the rapid destruction of their friends, and the ruin of the Christian arms in the east.

The death of Lucius however, was rather favourable to their cause, as Lambert, Archbishop of Milan, who was chosen his successor, and who took the title of Urban III., was a man of some activity, and felt an interest in the fate of Palestine.

During the short time that the chair of St. Peter remained vacant, Frederick contrived to make his peace with the King of the two Sicilies, and concluded a treaty of marriage between his eldest son Henry, and Constantia, the niece, and acknowledged heir of William; and in order that the arrangement might be completed without any further delay, the Prince was ordered to Milan, where he was met by the

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1185.

Frederick makes  
peace with the King  
of the two Sicilies.

BOOK IV. princess, and the ceremony was performed in

A.D. 1186.

The King of the Romans marries Constantia, the heiress of Sicily.

the Church of St. Saviour. Constantia was upwards of thirty years of age, and Henry not more than twenty; but the advantages which it was supposed would result to the empire from their union, made any difference in their years a matter of very minor consideration, and in such alliances, the feelings or inclinations of the parties concerned, were neither consulted or attended to.

Frederick returns to Germany.

The Sicilians however, were very adverse to the match, and openly declared their fixed resolution that it should never prove of any advantage to Henry or his heirs. Frederick endeavoured to overcome their prejudices, but having failed, he left his son in Italy and returned to Germany. His attention had been occupied for a longer period than usual in a distant and different country, but he had never for one moment lost sight of the changes which in any way affected his interests in the north, and to which we must now revert.

Waldemar, the early friend of Henry the Lion, did not long survive his defection from that prince. He died in 1182, and was succeeded on the throne of Denmark by his

eldest son Canute, who was the son-in-law of Henry. This prince at his succession had refused to do homage to the emperor for the Vandalian provinces, which he alleged were held in right of conquest, and not as an imperial fief. Frederick therefore endeavoured to embroil him in a war with his neighbours, and for that purpose got Rugilaus, Duke of Pomerania, to attack the territory of Jarimer, prince of Rugen, the uncle and vassal of Canute. Such an uncalled-for act of aggression soon produced the effect which the emperor anticipated, and the whole of the northern provinces were in a state of civil warfare. Denmark, however, instead of losing, gained by the conflict; and before Frederick left Italy, Canute had received the allegiance of Pomerania, and of all the provinces on the north bank of the Elbe.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1188.

His intrigues in the North.

The emperor, we may suppose, was not well pleased when he found that his plans had failed, and accordingly when he returned, he tried to inveigle the King of Denmark into Germany, under a pretence of getting him to attend the marriage of his sister, who had resided for several years at the imperial court as

He quarrels with Denmark.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1186.

the betrothed bride of the Duke of Suabia. But the counsellors of Canute knew what Frederick's intentions really were, and recollecting how he had taken advantage of the late king when he was in his power, and had compelled him to do homage even for the crown of Denmark, they prevented him from accepting the invitation, and gave the emperor to understand that his views and intentions were perfectly understood and appreciated.

Sends back to that country his son's bride.

Frederick in a rage at being again defeated, sent back the Danish princess, and that too in a manner which he conceived would be most galling to her brother, and at the same time he prevailed upon his nephew, the Landgrave of Thuringen, to repudiate his wife, who was also a princess of Denmark, and either the sister or mother of Canute.

History of Henry the Lion resumed.

Henry the Lion had made up his mind to await with patience the time when his affairs could be discussed in a general diet without exciting those feelings that led to personal invective, and were calculated to produce private conflicts, and he returned about this period to the city of Brunswick, under the permission which had been granted him at the

His return to Brunswick.

council of Verona. The education of his sons, and the management of his small domain, occupied the whole of his attention, until the news of the fall of Jerusalem, which reached Europe towards the end of the year 1187, called forth the energies of his mind, and led him again to mingle with the princes of the empire.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1187.

The news of the  
capture of Jerusalem

The capture of the Holy City, which for upwards of a century had been under the domination of Christian princes, roused once more the spirit of the Crusades. The emperor was prevailed upon to call a diet at Metz, where, after hearing in detail an account of the sufferings of the Christians in the east, he unfurled the banner of the Holy Cross, and was joined by his son Frederick and upwards of sixty of the prelates and nobles, who were present at the meeting. From Metz they proceeded to Goslar, where another diet was called to regulate the expedition in which they were about to engage, and to settle the affairs of the empire upon a permanent basis, as also to enlist as many of the nobility as were willing to march under his banner. Henry the Lion attended at these diets, and pressed for some decision

A.D. 1188.

Excites an interest in  
Europe.

Henry attends a diet  
at Goslar.

BOOK IV. in regard to the duchy of Saxony, which he  
 A.D. 1188. still hoped to have restored. His sufferings

The decision given  
 by this diet.

had begun to make an impression in his favour among many of the princes of the empire, while the Kings of England and Denmark took more than a friendly interest in his success. Frederick therefore proposed, and the assembly without consulting Henry gave it as their de-

cision, that he should be reconciled with his rival Duke Bernard; that if he wished to be put in possession of a part of his fiefs at that time, he must engage to accompany the army to the Holy Land. But if he expected to have the whole of his former possession restored to his family, that he must consent to be

He consents to a  
 second exile.

exiled for another period of three years. Henry accepted of this last condition, and constituting the Duchess Matilda, Regent of the provinces of Brunswick and Luneburg, and having obtained for his faithful commander, Count Lipstadt, the restitution of the whole of his estates, he once more set sail for England.

The emperor pre-  
 pares for the crusade

The emperor was ambitious of commanding a very numerous army, and took great pains to collect both men and money. He sold a great many fiefs belonging to the house of

Suabia, and prevailed upon the diet to tax all who could not carry arms to the extent of one-tenth of their property. Other means were resorted to in order to fill the military chest; and it is asserted that a more efficient army never took the field than that which was assembled on the present occasion. Presburg was appointed as their general rendezvous, and for that place Frederick set out, at the head of thirty thousand of his own troops, after having appointed the King of the Romans to the government of the empire, and given him directions to consult in all things the Archbishop of Cologne. On the confines of the Austrian states, Duke Leopold met the emperor, and conducted him to Vienna, where the count made many presents to the army as it continued to advance in the direction of Hungary. The Duke of Austria was also preparing for this crusade; but as his troops were to proceed by sea, he took leave of Frederick before he entered the Hungarian kingdom.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1180.

The army assembles  
at Presburg :

Passes through Hun-  
gary :

At Presburg the army was reviewed, and when the whole had assembled, they amounted to more than one hundred and fifty thousand men. Before they left the encampment, a



## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1189.

Is betrayed and at-  
tacked by the Greeks:

Crosses the Darda-  
nelles:

A.D. 1190.

council of war had decided on the route and strength of the divisions of the army, and had promulgated the laws which they judged necessary for the punishment and prevention of crime; their march was therefore conducted with great regularity, until they arrived on the confines of the Eastern empire. But when they entered that country, they were betrayed and attacked by the faithless Greeks, who refused them a passage, and imprisoned the ambassadors sent by Frederick to treat with their emperor; and it was not till he had taken Philippopolis, Adrianople, and the whole of Thrace, that Isaac could be brought to hear reason, or become bound by a treaty of peace. But as this was at last accomplished, and mutual presents exchanged, Frederick spent the winter at Adrianople, from which city he embarked his troops about the end of March, and crossing the Dardanelles in four days, without losing a single man, landed safely in Asia.

Having witnessed the difficulties that his uncle Conrad had encountered in his march through this country during the last crusade, he kept more to the right, and did not halt till he had reached Laodicea, where the army

was well received and furnished with every kind of refreshment. But in leaving that city they were betrayed by the guides of the Sultan of Iconium, and conducted into the mountainous country about the source of the river Meander, where they were attacked by the Turks, and suffered considerably, as they had to fight their way through a series of narrow defiles, in the face of an infidel rabble, that amounted to nearly three hundred thousand men. The emperor, however, when he discovered this treachery, kept steady to his purpose, and advanced in the direction of Iconium, the capital of the province; and having at last succeeded by a stratagem in drawing the enemy from the mountains, he was able to bring on a general engagement, in which he gained so complete a victory, that he was enabled to detach a part of the army to commence the siege of the city.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1190.

Impeded by the  
Moors.

Iconium, the metropolis of Lycaonia, in Asia Minor, now known as Cogni, the capital of the province of Karamania, was, in the days of Frederick Barbarossa, a powerful and rich city, surrounded by a strong wall, and defended by a number of towers of extraordinary

Iconium besieged,  
and taken.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1190.

height and great thickness. It was therefore capable of enduring a long siege ; but Melich, the son of the Sultan, smarting under the chastisement he had received in the late engagement, scarcely allowed the Christians time to settle their camp, when he made a sortie at the head of his whole garrison. The cavalry under the Duke of Suabia, who commanded at the siege, directed their chief attack against the Moorish prince, whose guards being overcome, fled back into the city. The Moors followed the example of their leader, and retreating in confusion, the Christians entered the gates along with their enemies, and obtained possession of the place ; while Melich and a few of his officers escaped into the castle.

Frederick gains a  
second victory :

Frederick, in the meantime, ignorant of their success, found himself in front of the principal army of the Sultan, with only that half of the Christian force which he had retained under his own command. He was attacked with such vigour, that his troops were on the point of giving way, but hastening to the front ranks, he so animated them by his words and his example, that they returned to the charge, and overcoming the enemy's advanced guard, threw

their whole army into confusion, and obtained a complete victory. The Moors left upwards of ten thousand men dead on the field, and the remainder of them fled to the mountains.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1190.

The emperor, after this victory, entered the city in triumph, and the soldiers being allowed to pillage, they found abundance of riches and provisions, and were amply rewarded for their late sufferings. Frederick halted at this place for seven days, and having dictated terms of peace to the vanquished sultan, and received what he considered a sufficient number of hostages, he advanced towards Syria, and on the 30th of May, arrived at the foot of that part of Mount Taurus, (on the confines of Cilicia,) which divides Isauria from Lycaonia. By the 10th of June, he had passed through the defiles of this mountain, and his army was collected on the banks of the River Cydnus, where he halted, that the troops might recover from the fatigues of so long a march.

Advances towards  
Syria:Reaches the banks  
of the River Cydnus

Having dined one day on the banks of this river, he was tempted to bathe in its pure waters, but he had scarcely reached the middle of the stream, when his limbs became benumbed with the cold, and he sank to the bottom.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1190.

Where he dies.

Though instantly recovered, and brought to the shore, he did not survive many minutes; and thus perished Frederick Barbarossa, one of the first generals of his age, and one of the greatest monarchs that ever held the sceptre of Germany. His son, the Duke of Suabia, remained in the command of the army, and having distributed his father's wealth among the officers and soldiers, and embarked one part of them in vessels, furnished by the Armenians, he set out with the remainder for Antioch, which they reached, after a very harassing march of more than six weeks' duration. From thence, he advanced to Tyre, but disease and the enemy had now so thinned his ranks, that not more than six or seven thousand infantry remained, and his cavalry had not more than five or six hundred horses, yet, with these few troops, he proceeded to join the Christian force, which for more than two years had been occupied in the siege of Ptolemais.

The army under the  
Duke of Suabia  
nearly destroyed.

Henry the Lion in  
England:

When Henry the Lion arrived for the second time in England, he found his aged father-in-law engaged in a contest with the King of France and his eldest son Richard, who had done homage to Philip for Normandy, and so

overcome with grief and chagrin, at the success of their arms, that he died shortly afterwards, (6th July, 1189). Richard, who succeeded to the throne, was in France, but hastening to England, was crowned by Baldwin, Archbishop of Canterbury.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1190.

The death of the Duchess Matilda, which occurred at Brunswick, about a month previous to that of her father, was a source of great distress to Henry, and rendered his exile very uncomfortable; he therefore prevailed upon Richard, to furnish him with a small fleet, in which he embarked for the mouth of the Elbe, and landing near Stade, was met by a body of troops sent to his assistance by his son-in-law the King of Denmark.

Returns to Saxony,  
on the Duchess Ma-  
tilda's death :

Hartwick, Archbishop of Bremen, also declared in his favour, and he was joined by a number of discontented nobles, who, under such circumstances, were always ready to take up arms in behalf of any party that could find them employment. With this army he advanced against Bardewick, and took it by assault, when that unfortunate place was once more delivered up to pillage and destruction. The cities of Lubeck, Hamburgh, Pleccia, and many

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1190.

His efforts to recover  
possession of the  
country:

others, to avoid a similar fate, opened their gates at his approach; but the Castle of Lawenburg kept him employed for more than a month, and would not surrender, until he had engaged to allow the garrison and the inhabitants to dispose of themselves as they pleased. Henry then directed Walter of Baden to proceed with the troops which he had raised in Holstein, and invest the Castle of Sigebert; but Eggon of Sture, who advanced to the relief of the castle, prevailed upon the troops to abandon Henry, and return to the service of Count Adolphus, their former master.

Walter was therefore deserted by his troops, and to add to his disgrace, was taken prisoner, and confined in the castle he had been sent to conquer, and a great part of Holstein was eventually recovered by Adolphus.

Opposed by the King  
of the Romans

The King of the Romans, when he was made acquainted with the return of Henry the Lion, and his success in Holstein, advanced into Saxony, at the head of a considerable army, and took up a position before Brunswick, with the view of besieging it. But the season was too far advanced, and the city too well fortified, for him to expect to make any impression; and

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1191.

after halting for a few days to reconnoitre, he was obliged to decamp. In his retreat, he attempted to surprise the Castle of Limmer, and in this he also failed ; but determined to achieve something, he directed his steps towards Bremen, for the purpose of punishing the bishop, who was considered the principal instigator of the war. Hartwick was declared a rebel, and the ban of the empire pronounced against him.

Henry the Lion was soon informed of his friend's danger, and advancing to his support, he found the enemy encamped on the banks of the Arle, within a few miles of Verden, where, from having destroyed the country, they were exposed to all the inclemencies of the season, and in want of provisions. He took up a position on the opposite side of the river, where, as he had plenty of supplies, he was able to watch their motions. The king now discovered that he must either risk a battle or retire, because he found, if he remained for any length of time in his present camp, his army would be entirely destroyed by disease. Many of his friends advised a retreat, but Bernard, Duke of Saxony, who was chiefly interested in the contest, represented, in strong terms, the

He advances against  
Bremen :



**BOOK IV.** disgrace of flying before an enemy whom the  
**A.D. 1191.** states had proscribed; and the chiefs of the  
 army having decided on hazarding a battle, the  
 And determines on giving Henry battle: king, to retrieve in some measure his character,  
 that had been compromised by his flight from  
 before Brunswick, gave his consent.

The army was ordered to advance, but as they had to cross the river in their front, it became necessary for them to wait till the ice was sufficiently strong to carry them over. As the frost continued, they were not long detained, and crossing in the neighbourhood of Henry's camp, they might have taken him in flank, before he was aware of their advance; but disdaining, as it should seem, to obtain so easy a victory, they made a long detour round Verden, and gave him time to make the necessary preparations for their reception.

The left wing of the imperialists, commanded by Duke Bernard, was speedily overpowered by the right wing of Henry, and thrown into disorder; but they afterwards rallied, and kept their ground, until the king, after defeating Henry's left wing, returned to their support. Both armies were animated by the presence of their princes, and the battle continued with

unrelenting fury, until the darkness of the night put an end to the engagement. The imperialists remained masters of the field of battle, but the loss was nearly equal. The Bishop of Bremen immediately fled to England, that he might avoid the anger of the king.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1191.

And gains a victory.

When it became known in Palestine, that Henry the Lion was at the head of an army in Saxony, Count Schaumburg, who had succeeded to the Duchy of Holstein, left the emperor, and returned to Germany. On his arrival, he found the face of affairs greatly changed. The king, after the battle of Verden, retired to Goslar, where the Archbishops of Mentz and Cologne, taking the part of Henry the Lion, procured an assembly to be held at Fulda, in which his affairs were amicably discussed. Through the mediation of these prelates, a treaty was effected, by which it was agreed, that the city of Brunswick should be laid open in four parts, the citadel of Lawenburg entirely destroyed, and Lubeck divided between Henry and Adolphus. Henry delivered up his son Lothaire as an hostage for the fulfilment of this treaty, and Henry, his eldest son, engaged to accompany the King of

A peace is effected between Henry and the king.

BOOK IV. the Romans, with a train of fifty horsemen, in

A.D. 1191. an expedition he was about to undertake, for

The King of the Romans enters Italy: the purpose of taking possession of the kingdom of Sicily, which had devolved to him in right of his wife, by the death of the good King William, but in which a party, headed by the chancellor of the kingdom, had caused the Count of Leccio to be crowned at Palermo.

Receives the news of his father's death:

By the unexpected death of his father, as already stated, (the news of which reached him while on his march) Henry had also succeeded to the empire, and he became not less anxious to receive the crown at Rome, than he was to secure the Sicilian kingdom. He therefore advanced rapidly at the head of his troops, and passing the Alps about the end of the year, he entered Italy.

On his arrival at Cremona, he was informed of the death of Pope Clement III., and of the election of his successor, who took the title of Celestine. Anxious to secure the good will of the Italians, he granted permission to the cities of Cremona and Bologna to coin money, and confirmed to the churches of Reggio and Padua the fiefs of which they were in possession. From Cremona, he crossed the Apennines, and

concluded a treaty with the cities of Pisa and Genoa, who engaged to furnish him with a fleet to transport his army into Sicily. From Pisa, he sent an embassy to Rome to report to the Pope his reasons for coming into Italy, and to arrange for the ceremony of his coronation. The young Henry of Saxony was charged with this mission, and through his perseverance, Celestine, who had retarded his own ordination, that he might impede the coronation of the emperor, was made a priest on Saturday, a bishop on Easter Sunday, and on Monday he gave the imperial crown to Henry and the Princess Constantia; but after he had placed the crown on the head of Henry, who was on his knees before the altar, he knocked it off with the point of his foot, and directed the cardinals to lift it and replace it. This he did, as it was said, to shew that the imperial crown was the gift of the sovereign pontiff, and might be removed from the head of its possessor whenever he pleased.

After his coronation, the emperor proceeded to complete his measures against Tancred, whom the Sicilians had made their king.

This prince was an illegitimate son of Roger,

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1191.

And is crowned at Rome:

He prepares to invade Sicily:

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1191.

consequently the half-brother of the empress Constantia, and he had a strong party in the kingdom. The Pope, however, claimed Sicily as a fief of the Holy See, and while he did not hesitate to declare Tancred an usurper, he shewed equally by his conduct that the emperor's views were not quite in accordance with his wishes or intentions. But Henry cared little for the claims of the Pontiff. His troops entered Campagnia, Apuleia, and Calabria, and in a short time obtained possession of all the cities in those provinces. He then advanced against Naples, the strong hold of his rival, and laid siege to it in regular form.

He besieges Naples.

Conduct of the young  
Prince of Brunswick.

From the moment that the young Prince of Saxony joined the Emperor, he had distinguished himself by his zeal in forwarding the interests of his sovereign. It was altogether owing to his influence and interest with the Pope that the emperor and empress were crowned, and the conquest of so many cities in so short a space of time had been accomplished in some measure by his activity and prudence, in directing the troops under his command. Presuming therefore that his services had entitled him to some con-

## BOOK IV.

A.D 1191.

sideration, he approached the emperor, and besought him to grant his father's pardon. But Henry either could not or would not listen to his solicitations, and in disgust he quitted the camp. An attempt was made to have him detained, but he escaped to Ostia, and embarking on board a ship about to sail, returned by sea to Germany.

He returns to Germany.

The emperor continued for some time to carry on the siege of Naples, without being able to make any progress towards its reduction. As the season advanced, the heat became so oppressive, that many of his principal officers, and a great number of his troops, were carried off by disease; and as he was at last taken dangerously ill himself, it became necessary to abandon the siege altogether. He retired with the army to the neighbourhood of Mont Cassin, where the air was purer, and where he gradually recovered; but as he was no longer in a condition to support the cities that had declared in his favour, they began to make their peace with Tancred. The empress Constantia had established her court at Salernum, and that city, to gain favour with the rival king, was not only the first that opened its

The emperor obliged to raise the siege of Naples.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1191.

The Empress made  
a prisoner.

gates on the approach of his troops, but seizing the princess, they delivered her up to her brother.

Tancred, who knew the value of his prize, resolved to make the most of it, and absolutely refused to deliver her over to her husband, unless he would renounce all claim to the crown of Sicily; but the Pope having interfered in the matter, and threatened to lay the kingdom under an interdict, he consented to her release on easier terms.

Henry the Lion re-  
news the war in Hol-  
stein.

After the return of the Prince of Saxony from Italy, Henry the Lion considered the treaty he had signed at Fulda as no longer binding, and refused to deliver up Holstein to the Count of Schaumburg. Adolphus he knew could not take it from him by force of arms, and the emperor was too much occupied in Italy to afford him that support which his situation demanded. In his distress however the Count applied to Bernard, Duke of Saxony, and the Margrave of Brandenburg, and as they had each a personal interest in the subjugation of Henry, they granted him the assistance he required. With the aid of their troops, he soon drove the Duke out of Holstein, and following up his success,

## BOOK IV

A.D. 1191.

encamped before Lubeck. But Henry had now taken the field, and detaching a strong body of troops to the relief of that city, they came upon Count Schaumburg before he was aware of their advance, and throwing his camp into disorder, entered in triumph. This induced the Count to withdraw his army from before the city, and advance against Stade, which, though a place of less importance, was even then one of the strongest fortresses on the Elbe. But as it was without a sufficient garrison, and in want of supplies, it made no resistance, and he accomplished this conquest with so much facility, that he returned in better spirits to renew the siege of Lubeck. That city hardly pressed, and no longer supported by the Duke of Saxony, soon entered into terms also, and allowed his army to take quiet possession of its extensive fortifications. Adolphus having thus secured, through the assistance of his allies, the possession of the country to which an imperial grant had given him a claim, applied to the emperor, and obtained an additional gift of the city of Lubeck and county of Stade. This success excited so much jealousy in his neighbours and late sup-

Loses Stade and  
Lubeck.



## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1192.

Henry the Lion with-  
draws from the civil  
war.

History of Richard  
I., King of England:

porters, Duke Bernard and the Landgrave, that they in their turn declared war against him, and made an attempt to drive him from that very country which their own troops a few months before had put him in possession of. But Adolphus had got the Counts of Ratzburg and Swerin to join his party, and was more than a match for his opponents. Higher views and more important objects than the prosecution of this petty warfare began now to occupy the attention of Henry the Lion. He withdrew indeed from the contest altogether, and had retired to the city of Brunswick to reflect on the best means of establishing a firm and lasting peace with the emperor, when he received the news of the imprisonment of his brother-in-law, the King of England.

Richard of England, soon after his coronation, began to prepare for an expedition to the Holy Land; and desirous of surpassing all the princes of Christendom in his zeal for the support of the cross, he expended the treasure amassed by his father,—caused his subjects to be taxed, and openly exposed to sale all the castles and manors of the crown, in order to provide funds for the support of his army. But notwithstanding

his preparations, which may be said to have consumed the wealth of three kingdoms,—his personal bravery, that never was surpassed, and the exertions of his gallant army, seldom equalled,—he was compelled, after a two years' war in Palestine, to conclude a truce with Saladin, that the safety of the Christians might be secured, when the state of his kingdom required his presence in Europe.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1192.

About the beginning of October, he had embarked at Ptolemais for Corfu, and from thence departed for Ragusa, in the Gulf of Venice, when the vessel in which he sailed was driven by a storm upon the coast of Istria, and wrecked. As he had some difficulty in reaching the shore, he resolved to proceed by land through Sclavonia; and as his route afterwards lay through the states of his enemy the Duke of Austria, he disguised himself and his suite in the habit of pilgrims, that they might pass undiscovered. They had reached Vienna in safety, when the liberality of his expenditure, and the imprudence of some of his followers, betrayed his secret, and he was seized by order of the Duke, and thrown into prison. When the emperor was informed of his capture, he

He leaves Palestine:

Is made a prisoner at Vienna:

## BOOK IV

A.D. 1193

sent to desire that he might be delivered over to his keeping; and upon an understanding that he was to receive a part of his ransom, Leopold agreed to give him up, and had him conveyed to Hagenau.

Ambassadors sent  
from England to  
condole with him:

When the news of the king's imprisonment spread, as it speedily did, it created a great sensation in Europe, and was the cause of much disquietude in England. Eleanor despatched ambassadors to condole with her son, and when they met him on his way to the imperial head-quarters, they were overcome with grief at seeing him in fetters; but Richard treated the matter as one of those accidents to which all men were liable, and comforted them with the assurance that he would soon be at liberty.

Accused before the  
German diet:

At Hagenau he was brought before an assembly of the German states, and publicly accused of having committed six very serious crimes against the emperor and empire, to whom it was asserted he owed allegiance.

The first of these crimes was having contracted an alliance with Tancred, for the purpose of supporting him in his usurpation of the kingdom of Sicily.

The second, that by his disagreement with the King of France, he had prevented the conquest of the kingdom of Jerusalem.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1192.

The third, that by his seizure of the kingdom of Cyprus, he had employed the army destined for the defence of the Cross, in the destruction of a Christian prince.

The fourth related to the affront which he had put upon the Duke of Austria.

The fifth accused him of being privy to the murder of the Marquess of Montferrat.

And the last and chief crime of which he had been guilty was having concluded a truce with Saladin, thereby proving, as the emperor affirmed, that he had an understanding with the infidels, highly prejudicial, if not most dangerous, to the common interests of Christianity.

Richard might have objected to the authority of his judges, and pleaded as an independent and powerful sovereign, that he was only answerable to God and his own council for any part of his conduct; but he disdained every such paltry evasion, and boldly answered, that as to the first crime of which he was accused, it in no way concerned the emperor. He had not made Tancred King of Sicily, but finding him in possession of the kingdom, he

Defends his conduct.

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1193.

His defence continued:

had treated with him as he had a right to do. With regard to the second, it was the unfounded jealousy and suspicion of the King of France, that had prevented their arms from making more progress in the Holy Land; and as he had been the first to desert the cause of the Cross, he alone ought to bear the blame of their want of success. That in the third place, if his having conquered the kingdom of Cyprus was to be considered as a crime, he was proud to think that by it he had been the means of delivering that kingdom from an usurper and a tyrant, whose conduct and cruelties justly merited the punishment he met with; and that it must be apparent to all who knew the circumstances, that he had not been induced to make the conquest from any motives of ambition or avarice, as he had voluntarily given up the kingdom to Guido, Count of Lusignan, as some recompense for his loss of the kingdom of Jerusalem. As to the fourth charge, if he had done an injury to the Duke of Austria, that prince had taken his revenge, in loading him with chains, though he had hoped he would have sought it in a way more suitable to his rank and his honour, as a prince. On the fifth charge, he could scarcely allow

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1192.

himself to speak. He appealed, however, to the tenor of his whole conduct through life, and his actions, which were before the world; and he asked, if there was any man breathing who could for a moment suppose, that he was capable of having recourse to such infamous means for the destruction of an enemy. But as the last crime of which he was accused was a public measure, that might require explanation, he made no hesitation in entering into an examination of the causes that led to its adoption, or in explaining the state of affairs that rendered it necessary; and in a clear and distinct manner he went over the events of the war in Palestine, modestly alluding to his own share in these campaigns. His arguments made such an impression upon the assembly, that the princes of Germany, with one accord, besought Henry to discharge him from custody. This, the emperor promised to do, and further engaged to have him reconciled to the King of France; but the princes had no sooner separated, than Henry repented of his promise, and demanded of Richard an enormous ransom. The terms were hard, yet as he had intelligence of the intrigues of the King of

He is declared innocent:

**BOOK IV.** France, and his brother John, who by his  
**A.D. 1193.** detention hoped to obtain the crown of England, he consented to pay the money demanded, and further, that it should be brought into Germany, at his own proper risk.

**His ransom agreed upon:** To give effect to this arrangement, a treaty was regularly signed, and Richard wrote to the queen, his mother, to entreat that the money might be raised with as little delay as possible. One hundred thousand marks of silver were to be paid before he left his prison, and hostages delivered for the payment of fifty thousand more, at a future period. England had not had time to recover from the exhausted state in which she was left by Richard, and in her divided and distracted condition, was ill able to advance so large a sum, but from the representations and entreaties of the queen-mother, and the pity felt for a king whose noble deeds in Palestine had become the theme of popular applause throughout Christendom, every one was induced to contribute according to his means, and by begging and borrowing, the sum of one hundred thousand marks was at last procured.

**And is raised in England.**

When the King of France heard that the queen was on her way to Germany with this

ransom, he wrote to Prince John, to look to himself, for as he expressed himself, "the devil was about to be let loose," and ambassadors were sent secretly to the emperor, to bribe him to find some further excuse for confining Richard, and they offered him a thousand pounds sterling, during every month that he could detain him.

## BOOK IV

A.D. 1194.

*Intrigues of Prince John and the King of France.*

The emperor, tempted by these large offers, would, it is believed, have entered into their views, and, indeed, began to act in a manner which too plainly indicated that the treaty he had signed with the captive monarch was not considered of any importance; but Henry the Lion, who had taken a deep interest in the fate of his brother-in-law, hastened to Spires, where a diet was ordered to assemble, and where Eleanor had already arrived with the money that was to be paid when her son obtained his liberty, and the hostages that were to guarantee the full payment of the remainder.

*Henry the Lion defeats their measures,*

The emperor had the baseness to propose, that the consideration of the treaty he had concluded with Richard should be delayed, and its fulfilment postponed till another meeting of the states could be held in the following year. But the Duke of Saxony boldly accused him of



**BOOK IV.** falsehood and deceit, and calling upon the  
 —  
**A.D. 1194.** princes of the empire, who had sanctioned this  
 treaty by their consent, and pledged their honour to its being faithfully kept, to redeem their faith, and support their honour, they

And is supported by  
 the German princes.

unanimously declared, that they were determined to have it executed immediately, and that no infringement would be suffered to pass with impunity. The emperor was either intimidated by these threats, or had become ashamed of his conduct, and he gave directions that as soon as the money was paid to his treasurer, and the hostages delivered to his Grand Marshal, the King of England might consider himself as no longer a prisoner.

Richard is set at  
 liberty.

Henry the Lion brought two of his sons, and delivered one to the emperor, and the other to the Duke of Austria, as a pledge, that the king, their uncle, would fulfil his part of the treaty with these princes.

Richard had some secret information, that the emperor was still in treaty with his enemies, and therefore was no sooner free to depart, than he set off for the Netherlands. He proceeded to Antwerp, without halting for a moment on the road, and it was well that he did so, as the emperor when relieved from the pre-

sence of his bold councillors, despatched messengers in every direction, with instructions to seize the king wherever they could meet with him, and under some pretence or other, to have him detained in prison. But he evaded all their snares, and getting on board a ship at Antwerp, was landed in safety at Sandwich, on the 10th of March, 1194.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1194.

And arrives in England:

He had been four years absent from England, and upwards of fifteen months of that time a prisoner in Germany. But though in confinement, he was not inactive, and the welfare of his relations occupied as much of his attention as his own immediate concerns. Though repeatedly urged, he would never give his sanction to the measures that had been adopted against the Duke of Saxony, and before he left Germany, he had succeeded in getting the whole of the provinces on the Elbe restored to Henry, and the imperial ban removed. He had also succeeded in arranging another affair, which was not of less importance to the House of Guelph.

Result of his exertions in favour of the House of Saxony.

Conrad, Count Palatine of the Rhine, the brother of Frederick Barbarossa, and uncle of the reigning emperor, had an only daughter, the support of his declining years, and the heiress

## BOOK IV.

---

 A.D. 1194.

of his large possessions. She had been sought in marriage by the King of France, and her intriguing cousin had promised her to Philip; but when the lady was consulted, she declined the honour they intended for her, and declared that she was able to choose a husband for herself. She had seen and admired the young Duke of Brunswick, and had resolved that he only should receive her hand.

The gallant Henry had long been in love with his fair relation, though the enmity that existed between their families had hitherto prevented him from declaring his sentiments. But notwithstanding that there had been no opportunity for explanation, their sentiments were perfectly understood by each other, and when Agnes found that compulsion had been suggested by the emperor, and she was in danger of being sacrificed to his ambitious projects, she fled from her father's palace, and took refuge in the arms of her lover. It was supposed that her mother approved of the step she had taken, and that, under her auspices, they were privately married.

Henry of Brunswick obtains the heiress of the Palatine.

The emperor was greatly irritated, when he found how his plans were thwarted, and endeavoured to prevail upon his uncle to disinherit

the princess ; but in this he failed, and through the mediation of Richard, who warmly espoused the cause of his young nephew, the parties were reconciled. Henry obtained the consent of the emperor to his union with Agnes, and in her right received the reversion of the County Palatine.

BOOK IV

A.D. 1194.

Henry the Lion, in consequence of this arrangement so favourable to his son, became perfectly reconciled to the emperor, and when he returned to Brunswick after the liberation of Richard, he occupied himself almost entirely in the settlement of his private affairs, and in consolidating the government of those states that had been rescued from the grasp of his merciless enemies.

Henry the Lion reconciled with the Emperor:

He still retained the title, and assumed the authority of Duke of Saxony, but his power was confined to the principalities of Brunswick and Luneburg, and a few minor fiefs that were held of these states. He was now in his sixty-sixth year, with his constitution greatly injured and his health impaired, and as he felt his end gradually approaching, he withdrew from the cares of this world, and spent the greater part of his time in preparing for the next.

Retires to Brunswick in bad health:

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1195.

His family :

By the Princess Matilda he had four sons and two daughters. One of his sons, and the eldest daughter, died when young ; but three sons and a princess survived, and were now the comfort of his declining years. Henry, the eldest prince, born in 1173, was in possession of the County Palatine, while Otho, the second son, born in 1175, and William, the youngest, born in 1184, were destined to succeed him at Brunswick and Luneburg. Gertrude, the only issue of his first marriage, had long graced the throne of Denmark, and Matilda by her marriage with Godfrey, Count of Pertico, which some read Perth, had secured to herself a splendid alliance. Happy, therefore, in his family, though deprived of much of his worldly grandeur, he spent his last days in peace, and expired, after a short but severe illness, on Sunday the 6th of August, 1195.

His death,

The enemies of Henry the Lion accuse him in their writings of being proud beyond measure, and setting no bounds to his ambition, though they allow that he was neither vindictive in his feelings, nor ungrateful to his friends.

And character.

His greatest failing certainly was avarice. He lost the sovereignty of two duchies for the

paltry sum of five thousand marks of silver, and was disinherited by his uncle, because he hesitated to pay to that prince, then advanced in years, a trifling moiety of the revenue of his rich domains. Still, in many instances, he was most liberal; in the expenditure of his court and army, he surpassed even the sovereign of the empire; and in all his public actions he appears as a great and magnanimous prince.

BOOK IV.

A.D. 1195.

As a man, he was strongly made, though of the middle stature; and there was a nobleness in his air and manner, that sufficiently bespoke his high birth. His complexion was sallow, his face large, with prominent dark eyes; his hair was short and curled, and his beard thick and bushy.

On the death of the Duchess Matilda, Henry caused a superb mausoleum to be erected near the high altar in the cathedral of St. Blase, in which her remains were deposited; and by his will he directed that his own body should be laid in the same tomb.

There are no documents in existence that distinctly mention either the time or place of his birth, but it is probable that he first saw the light at Ravensberg, in Swabia, as imme-

## BOOK IV.

A.D. 1195.

diately after her marriage, the young duchess of Henry the Proud was conveyed to this castle, where she most likely remained until she had given birth to her son. According to the best credited accounts, Henry was born in 1129, though not baptized till Whit Sunday, 1136; and as he died on Monday the 6th of August, 1195, he had lived sixty-six, and reigned as a sovereign prince for upwards of fifty-six years.

In concluding the history of his eventful life, we shall transcribe the following lines, the production of some pious monk of the thirteenth century which were engraven on a wooden tablet and placed in front of the entrance to his tomb.

Hic jacet Henricus quondam dux  
 Conditor hujus Ecclesiæ,  
 Dignus nobilitate et Pius—  
 Moribus ornata, sibi conjux est Socrita,  
 Pauperibus larga, simplicitate bona,  
 Inclyta Mahtildis, Anglorum filia Regis.  
 Nutriat angelicis hos Deus ipse cibis.—  
 Adjacet optatus, horum sanguine natus  
 Otto coronatus, vermibus esca datus.  
 Hujus erat sponsa Philippi Stirps generosa  
 Filia formosa, nunc cinis antea rosa,  
 Qui legis hæc metra, memor horum sis peto,  
 Pensa ! quid caro ? quid vita ? quid res ? nisi mors  
 Cinere Umbra ?

## BOOK V.

CONTAINING THE HISTORY OF THE SONS OF  
HENRY THE LION.

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1195.

Division of the  
states of Henry the  
Lion.

By the last will of Henry the Lion, the possessions that remained to his family were equally divided among his three surviving sons. Henry the eldest had Brunswick and its dependencies; Otho had Haldeslaben; and William Luneburg. As the two last however were still in bondage (the one with the Emperor, and the other with the Duke of Austria), as security for what remained to be paid of the ransom of their uncle King Richard of England, the government of the whole devolved upon Henry. This prince had already received the reversion of the Palatinate of the Rhine, and through the intercession of his father-in-law, he had been restored to the good graces of the emperor. When the expedition was formed for the second invasion of Sicily, the young Henry joined his sovereign with a

History of his eldest  
son Henry.



## BOOK V.

A.D. 1195.

Presented with the  
County Palatine:

number of the Saxon nobility and a large body of militia from his several states; and when they returned from the conquest of that kingdom, he received the investiture of the County Palatine, which had fallen vacant by the death of Conrad. The ceremony was performed with great splendour, and attracted an immense number of spectators, but the festivities that followed were greatly marred by a quarrel between the Jews and Christians.

Tumult during the  
ceremony.

During the reign of Conrad, the Jews had been favoured and protected in the Palatinate, and their great wealth had excited the envy of their Christian brethren. Their appearance therefore at the ceremony of the investiture gave great offence, and they were attacked and massacred without mercy. But as soon as the tumult could be suppressed, the most active of their murderers were seized by order of the emperor, and executed upon the spot.

It was about this time that the death of the sultan Saladin was announced in Europe, and as that event afforded a favourable opportunity of renewing the war in the East, Celestine was moved to preach another crusade among the nations of Christendom. France

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1196.

and England unfortunately were engaged in a bloody war, the Pope therefore saw that there was little chance of his being listened to in those countries, and he addressed himself principally to the emperor. Henry VI. was glad of an opportunity of shewing his attachment to the head of the church, and entered warmly into the views of his Holiness. He called a diet at Strasburg, which was attended by a legate from Rome, and letters were read from the Pope, exhorting Henry to place himself at the head of the forces of the empire, that they might have the glory of re-establishing the kingdom of Jesus Christ in Palestine. The emperor declared to the assembled princes his readiness to unfurl the banner of the cross, and his determination to sacrifice his wealth and his life in the prosecution of so noble an enterprise as the conquest of the Holy City; but as the arrangements necessary for such an expedition required much consideration, he directed another diet to be held at Worms. The Germans were not a little vain at the prospect of having this crusade entirely to themselves, and almost all the princes of the empire attended at the second meeting. They

The emperor engages in a crusade.

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1196.

Henry of Brunswick  
accompanies the  
first army to Pales-  
tine :

were addressed by several prelates, who came prepared for the occasion, and were so warmed by their eloquence, that they unanimously agreed to accompany their sovereign to the Holy Land. Our young prince, who is styled Duke of Brunswick and Count Palatine, was most zealous in promoting the good cause, and his troops formed one of the strongest divisions of the Christian force. The crusade however had become so popular, and the Germans volunteered in such numbers, that it was found advisable to form them into three separate armies.

That to which the followers of Henry were attached, was placed under the orders of the Archbishop of Mentz, and as soon as it was in order, it advanced by the route of Hungary.

Their march through  
Hungary.

On entering that kingdom they were joined by Margaret, the sister of Philip Augustus, King of France, who had lately been left a widow by the death of her husband Bela, King of Hungary, and who had determined on spending the rest of her days in the service of the cross. She had enlisted a number of soldiers, and taking the command of them in person, she continued one of the most steady sup-

porters of the Christian arms during the whole of the campaign in Palestine. After receiving this reinforcement, the Archbishop continued his march, and the army reached Constantinople in excellent order. Through the good offices of Philip, Duke of Swabia, who had married the daughter of the Eastern emperor, they met with a favourable reception, and a fleet was prepared to carry them to Antioch. From that city they proceeded to Tyre, and from thence in two days reached Ptolemais in safety. The second army embarked at Hamburg, Lubeck, and other places on the Elbe, and sailing down the English Channel, coasted along Spain and Portugal. They were becalmed off the town of Silva, in the kingdom of Algarve, and as that country was still held by the Moors, the commander of the expedition availed himself of the opportunity to land a detachment, which, after a severe conflict, took and destroyed the town; but the wind becoming fair, they were re-embarked, and after a prosperous voyage, this army joined their companions at Ptolemais.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1196.

And favourable reception at Constantinople.

Second army of the crusaders.

The third army was to be commanded by the emperor in person, and while it was col-

BOOK V. lecting, he retired to Hagenau. He afterwards  
 A.D. 1196. called a meeting of the states at Gelnhausen,

Conduct of the emperor during the assembling of the third army.

where, for the first time, he made known his wish to have the crown declared hereditary in his family. This was objected to by several of the princes then present; but he at last prevailed upon them to acknowledge his infant son as his successor in the empire, and obtained their sanction to a decree, which established the pretensions of his heirs, whether male or female, to the imperial crown after his decease.

The young Frederick, though only three years of age, was crowned King of the Romans, and various regulations were adopted, with regard to the election of a sovereign, in the event of there being no heirs of his family. Henry then took the command of the army, and with it marched into Italy, as another revolt in the kingdom of Sicily called for his presence in that country before he proceeded to Asia. With the numerous force that he had under his command, Henry found little difficulty in reducing the revolted cities, or in subduing the rebellious nobles; but the kingdom was in such a state of agitation from the intrigues of the empress, and the discon-

tent of the people, that he determined to remain, and by his presence attempt to keep them in good order. The troops therefore that were destined for the east, embarked at Messina, and sailed for Ptolemais, under the orders of the Bishop of Wurtzburg.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1198.

The emperor remains in Sicily.

The Christians had a very numerous army in the Holy Land, but their success was by no means equal to what had been anticipated. Valeran, Count of Limburg, was the first to declare at an end the truce made by King Richard, and he began the war by murdering his Saracen prisoners. The Moors of course retaliated, and every Christian they could take was destroyed. The war had been raging for some time previous to the arrival of the army under the Archbishop of Mentz, but greatly to the disadvantage of the Christians, who had lost Joppa, and many other towns in Syria; and when Henry of Brunswick, and the army with which he served, reached Ptolemais, they found the whole country under the dominion of Saphadin, who had succeeded Saladin, and an army in the field capable of besieging that city itself. They therefore determined that as soon as the second army arrived, they would

War commenced in Palestine :

State of that country when Henry of Brunswick arrived:

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1197.

The measures he  
advised.

The Saracens con-  
quered in a general  
action:

Joppa and other  
places re-captured.

advance into the plain, and offer battle to the enemy. If they continued to remain within their walls, they found that they would soon be reduced to great distress for want of provisions. Accordingly, when the fleet from Hamburgh arrived, the whole of the Christian force was put in motion, and advanced in the direction of Baruth. Saphadin, whose troops were quartered in the neighbouring mountains, immediately descended into the plain, and the two armies met between the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon. As both parties were actuated by the most deadly hatred of each other, they were not long in coming to an engagement, and the Saracens, animated by the example of their leaders, fought with great bravery. But they were not able to stand against the impetuous charges of the heavy armed Germans, and being thrown into confusion, they soon fled to their camp in the mountains, leaving the whole plain covered with their dead and wounded. This victory was followed by the re-capture of Joppa, and of almost all the towns that had fallen into the hands of the Moors; but instead of advancing against the capital, which, from the confusion

that prevailed, must have yielded at the first summons, the Christian leaders continued to keep to their original intention, and after repairing the works of Joppa, advanced against Baruth. This city they took in a few days, and then proceeded to invest Thoron, a place of no importance, but one which from its situation was capable of arresting the progress of an army still more considerable than that which was now before it. After three months spent in a vain attempt to take this place, they found that they had made no progress whatever in the siege; and that Saphadin, from the leisure that had been afforded him, had again collected an army more numerous than that which had been defeated. Discontent and distrust began also to prevail in the camp, and it was even supposed that the gold of the infidels had succeeded in making traitors of some of the Christians. The Knights Templars and the Archbishop of Wurtzburg, whose force had but lately joined the army, gave up the siege, and returned to Ptolemais, while the Archbishop of Mentz and Henry of Brunswick were compelled by this desertion to abandon it also. They retired, however, upon

BOOK V.

A.D. 1197.

Siege of Thoron.

Discontent begins to prevail in the Christian army.

The eastern army separates from the German.



**BOOK V.** Joppa, and were closely pursued by Saphadin, who took up a position in the neighbourhood of that city. Both parties were afraid of coming to a general action, but notwithstanding that the Christian force was greatly inferior to that of the infidels, they kept up such a continued series of attacks, that they would soon have been forced to retire.

**A.D. 1197.**  
The latter retire to Joppa.

Henry of Brunswick was more distinguished during this blockade or siege of Joppa, than any other prince in the army, and with his Saxon troops so harassed the Moors by frequent and unexpected attacks, that they were

The news of the death of Henry VI. reaches the Germans:

preparing to raise the siege, when the news of the death of Henry VI., who was supposed to have died of poison administered by the empress, completely changed the face of affairs. The princes of Germany no longer felt any interest in this holy warfare. They immediately

They make a truce with Saphadin, and embark for Europe.

concluded a truce with Saphadin, and embarking at Tyre, returned to Europe. On their arrival in Germany, they found the princes of the empire greatly divided in opinion, as to whom they ought to give the imperial crown. Philip, Duke of Swabia, had a powerful party, and as the brother of the late

emperor, he claimed the government of the country in some measure as his birth-right. But the enemies of the house of Swabia had fixed upon the Duke of Lahrigen, and in an assembly held at Cologne, he was elected King of the Romans, by the party in opposition to Philip. This prince however was unwilling to sacrifice his wealth in a contest so doubtful, and he joined the party of his rival. The opposition then turned their eyes to Otho, the second son of Henry the Lion, and they determined to offer the crown to that prince.

Otho, as we have seen, was still a hostage with the emperor, when his father died ; but matters being amicably arranged with England, he obtained his liberty about the period that Henry marched the second time into Sicily, and was residing with his uncle in London, when the friends of his house called him to the throne of Germany. Albert, Count of Dasbourg, and Erick, Count of Lingengen, in Alsace, were sent over to announce his election, and the young prince lost no time in returning with them to the Continent. Richard furnished him with a large sum of money, and promised him his protection ; and on his ar-

BOOK V.

A.D. 1198.

A.D. 1200.

Otho the second son  
of Henry the Lion,  
elected King of the  
Romans :

BOOK V. rival at Cologne, his election was confirmed.  
 A.D. 1200. Philip, when he learnt the arrival of Otho,  
 Opposed by Philip : endeavoured to secure the city of Aix-la-Cha-  
 pelle, but Otho having collected a considerable  
 force, obtained possession of that city without  
 But is crowned at opposition, and was immediately crowned by  
 Aix-la-Chapelle : the Archbishops of Cologne and Treves. The  
 The empire divided whole of Westphalia, a great part of Saxony,  
 in opinion between the province of Cologne, the city of Strasburg,  
 the two candidates : the country of Alsace, with the Lower Mosselle,  
 declared for Otho ; while the rest of Germany  
 adhered to Philip. The King of France, from  
 his enmity to England, gave his countenance  
 to the latter, while Richard and the court of  
 Rome supported the former. The kingdom of  
 Lombardy was divided also, and while the  
 Marquis of Montferrat declared for the house  
 of Swabia, the Milanese and others sided with  
 the house of Guelph.

Henry, who had been the principal cause of  
 his brother's election, made great efforts to  
 maintain him on the throne, and in order that  
 he might be able to meet the expenses of the  
 war in which he was about to engage, he sold  
 to the Archbishop of Treves the privileges  
 which he enjoyed as the advocate of that see.

Both parties took the field, and the whole of the continent was involved in a civil war.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1200.

While the two princes of Brunswick continued to act in concert, the party of Otho had considerably the advantage, but having differed about the division of their paternal domains, Henry joined the party of Philip, and was followed by a number of those who had hitherto supported his brother. But what had tended still more to depress the fortunes of the young king, was the death of his friend and protector Richard, and the defection of King John, who, on his accession to the crown of England, had concluded a peace with France, and bound himself not to afford any support to his nephew.

Henry leaves his  
brother's party :

Otho, when made acquainted with this treaty, which had been entered into without his knowledge, sent ambassadors to demand from John the money that had been left to him by Richard, but as the King had need of this money himself, he refused to fulfil the testament of his brother. Otho then complained to the Pope, who wrote to desire that the King of England should comply with the wishes of his deceased brother, and pay to Otho the

The Pope supports  
Otho,

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1200.

sums left him ; and he commanded his legate in France to annul any contract that might exist between John and the French monarch, detrimental to the interests of the King of Germany. He also wrote letters to the Archbishop of Cologne and the princes of the empire, entreating them to agree in the election of an emperor, and intimated his wish that their choice should fall upon Otho, whose ancestors, he said, had always been the friends and supporters of the church. He had recognised him as their true and lawful sovereign, and was ready to give him the imperial crown. Notwithstanding this powerful support, Otho found himself in a situation of great difficulty.

But his party falls  
off :

His party continued to diminish daily, and many who would otherwise have been friendly to him, were displeased at the interference of the Pope, and became his enemies on that account.

On the other hand, various princes, and particularly the powerful prelates of the empire, adhered to his cause, and in all his difficulties

He continues firm in  
his measures :

Otho shewed so much firmness and resolution, that he was never without a considerable army in the field. His authority was acknowledged

by a great number of the German provinces, and the Kings of Denmark and Bohemia became his allies and friends. But Philip continued to have a decided majority of the princes in his favour, and as his army had become superior to that of his rival, was resolved to try the issue of a general action, and with that view advanced against Cologne, where Otho had his head-quarters. Otho's troops were inferior in numbers, but they were animated by the best spirit, and as the enemy advanced they kept their ground, and awaited the attack with great firmness. They were not able however to withstand the first shock of his numerous cavalry, but were thrown into confusion and completely dispersed. Otho was left almost alone in the midst of his enemies, and being dismounted, was in danger of being taken prisoner, yet his presence of mind did not forsake him, and with his sword he made a way through the ranks that surrounded him, and escaped to the castle of Wassenberg.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1205.

And obtains allies.

A.D. 1206.

Loses a general action,

And escapes with difficulty.

In the present state of his affairs, Otho saw that there was little chance of the contest ending in his favour, and with the view of prevailing upon his uncle, King John, to grant him

BOOK V. some supplies, he left Germany, and proceeded

A.D. 1206. to England. He found the king well-inclined

Retires to England: to listen to his demands, but as his exchequer had been exhausted by the war with France, it became necessary to have recourse to a new tax. The parliament was summoned, and granted a thirteenth of the moveable property of the clergy and laity, for the purpose of raising an army to support the emperor, and under the authority of this grant immense sums were collected. But instead of levying troops, John spent the money in idle pageantry and splendid feasts, with which he sought to amuse his nephew during the period that he remained in England; and when he embarked again for the Continent, he could only supply him with the

Gets a supply of money from King John. loan of five thousand marks of silver. During the absence of Otho, the Pope entered into a correspondence with his rival, and though he could not retract the sanction which he had given to the election of that prince, he became most desirous of having them reconciled to each other. The princes of the empire were equally anxious to put an end to a contest which had continued for so many years, and had involved the whole country in ruin, and it was

agreed that there should be a cessation of hostilities for the space of one year. Otho, therefore, on his return, found letters from the Pope urging him to agree to this truce, and to meet the states of the empire at Northausen, where by common consent they had resolved to meet the Pope's legate, and to consider amicably the pretensions of the rival sovereigns.

Otho at first refused to attend this assembly; but when assured of his safety, he no longer hesitated. Various expedients for restoring peace to the empire were suggested and discussed; and at last it was agreed that Otho should marry Beatrix, the only daughter of Philip, and that he should receive with her the duchy of Swabia, and various other fiefs, but that Philip should retain the crown during his life, and Otho have it in reversion. Otho would not accede to these terms, and declared that he would never yield up that crown which had been given him by the legitimate representatives of the German people. This determination left him without a single friend in the assembly, and so exasperated the cardinal legates, that they proceeded to absolve Philip from the sentence of excommunication under

BOOK V.

A.D. 1207.

Decision of the diet  
held at Northausen,

To which he refuses  
his assent.



## BOOK V.

A.D. 1207.

Philip acknowledged  
by all.

which he had lived for so long a time, and prevailed upon the Pope to acknowledge him as King of the Romans. Otho, however, continued firm in his opinion, and the diet separated without being able to accomplish a reconciliation.

Philip, who was now undoubtedly the acknowledged sovereign of Germany, retired to the city of Bamberg, where he was lodged in the bishop's palace. A slight indisposition had confined him to his chamber, and he was passing the day with the Bishop of Spire, his chancellor, and Henry de Trusches, his seneschal, when Otho of Wittelsbach, Count Palatine of Bavaria, begged for an audience. Orders were given for his admission, and under pretence of whispering some information in the ear of the king, he approached the couch on which he reclined, and drawing a dagger from his bosom,

Is assassinated by  
Count Wesselsbach.

plunged it into his neck, and instantly killed him. Henry de Trusches attempted to seize the murderer, but was severely wounded, and he escaped from the palace before the alarm could be given, and having horses ready, fled to a distant province.

After the death of Philip, Otho found little

difficulty in ascending the throne of the empire. It is true that the claims of the young Frederick were still in abeyance, but by a judicious distribution of the funds he had brought from England, and a proper attention to the feelings of his former opponents, he succeeded in gaining the support of all parties; and in an assembly held at Halberstadt, he was received and acknowledged by all parties as King of the Romans, and sovereign of the empire. He called another diet at Frankfort, in the month of November, where the princes who attended were equally unanimous in his favour, and he received from the Bishop of Spire, the Chancellor, the imperial insignia which had been kept in the castle of Trufels, in the Lower Alsace.

Otho now, of his own accord, proposed that he should marry Beatrix, the daughter of his deceased rival, and that all enmity between their houses should cease for ever. The princess, who was residing in Frankfort, appeared before the diet, and gave her consent to her marriage with the emperor; but at the same time she demanded that they should proceed to the trial of Otho of Wittelsbach, the murderer of her father, and that he and his accom-

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1207.

Otho succeeds, on the death of Philip, without opposition:

He agrees to marry the Princess Beatrix.

Who demands the trial of her father's murderers.

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1209.

plices should suffer that punishment which their crime merited. The emperor and the princes assured her that her demand should be attended to. They then swore to maintain the peace which had been so happily re-established in the empire, and agreed to suppress all taxes that had been imposed upon the cities in consequence of the late war.

Otho visits the different provinces:

From Frankfort the emperor proceeded to Nuremberg, and from thence to Bavaria and Swabia, when he held a diet at Augsburg. The Count of Wittelsbach, and his accomplice, the Marquis d'Andech, were put to the ban of the empire, and deprived of their fiefs, their dignities, and privileges, and a law was passed that they should never be restored. At Augsburg he received a deputation from Milan, and other cities in Lombardy, which assured him of their submission and fidelity as members of the empire.

And determines to visit Rome:

In this prosperous state of his affairs, the emperor determined to visit Italy. But before his departure, it was thought right that he should fulfil his promise to the princess Beatrix, and this being resolved upon in a diet at Hagenau, a dispensation was received from Rome, as they were within the forbidden de-

grees of consanguinity, and the day was fixed for the performance of the ceremony. Otho, when the time arrived, held his court at Wurtzburg, and it was one of the most brilliant that had met for a long time; as, in addition to the princes of Germany, many princes and nobles attended from Italy.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1309.

On the 25th of June, the day appointed for the celebration of the marriage, the emperor took his seat on the throne, supported by a cardinal legate on each side, and surrounded by the princes and nobles in attendance. Hugh, Cardinal of Ostia, then made a speech, proposing the union of Otho and the Princess Beatrix, as a measure that would tend to the welfare of the empire, and was commanded by the head of the church. The emperor then signified his assent; but the Abbot of Morimont rose, and declared in his own name, and in the name of all the Abbots of the order of Clugny to which he belonged, that such a marriage was forbidden by the laws of the church, and could not be contracted without committing a sin, notwithstanding that they had the Pope's dispensation; he, therefore, imposed as a penance upon the

The ceremony of his marriage at Wurtzburg.

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1202.

emperor, first—that he should become the protector of all monasteries, and of all widows and orphans; and, secondly,—that he should build a monastery for the order of the Cistercians in some part of his states, and go in person to the support of the cross in the Holy Land. Otho agreed to all these penances, and immediately the Duke of Austria and the Duke of Bavaria brought forward the princess, and the ceremony of betrothment was completed. Beatrix was then conducted to Brunswick, where it was proposed she should reside until the marriage could be consummated, for at this period she was only in her eleventh year.

Otho sends his brother Henry to England.

Otho continued to make every preparation for his journey to Italy, and sent his brother Henry to England, to make another demand of the treasure left him by his uncle Richard. We may remark here, that King Richard in his lifetime had given the revenues of the county of York, in England, and of the province of Poitou in France, to his nephew Otho, and that by his will he left him two-thirds of all his treasure, and a part of his jewels; and that as this money was necessary to support the expense of his journey to Rome, he was desirous of having it paid.

Henry of Brunswick found the king well-disposed to accede to the demand of the emperor, but the English nation was in such a state of disorder and rebellion, that it was impossible for him to do what he wished, and Henry returned without accomplishing the object of his mission.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1209.

As the time approached for the commencement of his journey, the tranquillity of the German provinces became the chief object of his attention. He appointed his brother Henry governor of Lorraine, and the provinces on the Moselle, and gave the command in Upper Germany to his friend Ludolph, Count of Hapsburgh. The latter he made his vicar-general and provincial advocate, and conferred on him the title of Landgrave of Alsace. Having finished these arrangements at Wurtzburg, he departed for Augsburg, where his army had been ordered to assemble, and on his arrival he despatched Wolfgar, Patriarch of Aquilia, to prepare the way for his reception in Italy. Wolfgar was a prelate of great talents, and intimately acquainted with the state of the country; but he found the people so well-disposed towards his master, that there was no necessity for any

Otho continues to prepare for his journey to Rome:

His favourable reception in Italy:

BOOK V.

A.D. 1209.

exertion on his part. The Italians considered Otho as a prince of their own body, and one to whose family they in some measure owed a natural allegiance, and the utmost anxiety was expressed by all parties to have him among them.

About the first of August he began to pass the Alps, and on the 22nd encamped on the banks of the Garda. Next day he crossed the Adige, and, as he approached Verona, was met by the Marquis Azo and the nobles, who attended him to his palace. At Milan his reception was still more flattering. The young nobles of the city met him at the gate, and led his chariot in triumph to the imperial residence. The streets through which he passed were hung with tapestry, and spread with boughs of olive and laurel, and the young ladies chaunted hymns to his praise. The archbishop placed the crown of Lombardy on his head, and in return he ratified the ancient privileges of Milan, and conferred many new favours upon her and her nobles. In every city and village through which he passed on his way to Rome, the people vied with each other in doing him honour, and he was greeted

everywhere with the most unbounded expressions of attachment.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1809.

He meets with the  
Pope at Viterbo,

He found the Pope at Viterbo, where he had passed the summer, and in this retirement they spent some days together, that they might confer at leisure on the matters that were afterwards to become the subject of their public discussions; and having at last arranged with regard to the security of the court of Rome during the presence of the German army, and settled the forms of the coronation ceremony, the Pope returned to the city, and he encamped outside its walls. Next morning, when he was about to enter Rome, according to the arrangements made with the Pope, he was waited upon by a deputation from the senate, and informed that he must first promise to enter with a train becoming the imperial dignity, and bind himself to ratify the ancient privileges of the city; and that he must agree to take the usual oaths, and make a present to the senate of seven tons of gold. Otho expressed his readiness to comply with every demand, except the last; for as the war he had maintained against his rival had completely exhausted his treasury, he had it not in his power, he said, to make any



## BOOK V.

A.D. 1200.

And enters Rome.

He takes the prescribed oaths,

And is crowned emperor.

present. On the 27th of September he made his public entry at the head of his guards, attended by a splendid train of princes and nobles, and was received by the Pope and his cardinals at the door of St. Peter's church, and conducted to a throne beside the altar. The first part of the ceremony consisted in administering an oath, by which he bound himself to do justice to all men, and to defend the church against all her enemies. He further promised to be the protector of all widows and orphans, and to be obedient to the Holy See: to restore to the church her ancient territories, and maintain her in all her rights, privileges, and immunities: to support the imperial dignity in all its splendour, and make peace with France through the mediation of the Pope; and lastly to remain at peace with Sicily during the minority of the young king. When this oath was finished Otho knelt at the altar, and the crown was placed upon his head; he then returned to his throne, and the ceremony concluded with a high mass. On leaving the church, the emperor, as was customary, held the stirrup for the Pope to mount his mule, and he walked by his side to the Palace of the Lateran, where they

dined together in great apparent friendship. The Holy Father attended Otho at his departure to the gate of the city, and having given him his benediction, requested that he would quit the Roman territory without loss of time.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1210.

The emperor found on his return to the camp, that his troops were in want of provisions, and that the Romans, instead of furnishing them with the necessary supplies, had begun to treat the Germans with great contempt.

They indeed carried their insolence to such a height, that the Germans flew to arms, and a tumult ensued, in which many lives were lost on both sides. The Pope, instead of condemning, seemed rather to encourage the insolence of the citizens, and the emperor began at last to doubt the sincerity of his friendly intentions.

A quarrel ensues between the Germans and Italians.

He found on reflection, too, that advantage had been taken of his situation to obtain his sanction to measures which were incompatible with each other, and highly detrimental to the interests of the empire, and that while he had been engaged in completing his arrangements with the court of Rome, the generals of the Pope had invaded and seized upon many of the Lombard states. He, therefore, directed his

He discovers the intrigues of the Pope:

## BOOK V.

---

A.D. 1810.

troops, by way of retaliation, to enter Campagna, and to take possession of the cities that had revolted. The Pope remonstrated; he claimed the cities in question as a part of the ancient patrimony of the church, and accused Otho of having already violated the oath he had so lately taken at the altar of God. To this accusation the emperor replied, that his oath as well as his duty bound him to maintain the integrity of the empire: that he was only acting in defence of his rights, and should continue the war until he had recovered the states that had been unjustly withdrawn from his authority.

Commences a war  
in Italy:

Without attending to any further remonstrance, he seized upon the whole of what constituted the still disputed patrimony of the Countess Matilda, and bestowed these states on his followers, as a reward for their attachment. He gave the Duchy of Spoleto to a Count Berthold, one of his favourites, and confirmed to the nobles who had remained faithful to his interests, the various fiefs of which they were in possession; but he exacted from all parties an oath, which bound them to support the dignity of the

empire in opposition to the usurpations of the court of Rome. The Pope alarmed at his success, had recourse to spiritual censures, and threatened to pronounce a sentence of excommunication. Otho cared little for this threat, but afraid it might have some influence on the Lombard cities, he hastened to Ravenna and Cremona. He spent some time at Bresse, in securing the fidelity of the people, by renewing and confirming various privileges that had been granted to them by his predecessors. At Ferrara and Bologna he was equally successful, and by his mild and affable manners succeeded in suppressing the factions that agitated their councils. From Ferrara he went to Placentia, where he endeavoured to compromise the differences between Pisa and Genoa, and having got them to agree to a truce for two years, he concluded a treaty with the Genoese, by which he secured the assistance of their fleets in his meditated invasion of Sicily.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1210.

The Pope threatens  
him with excommu-  
nication.

A.D. 1211.

Having thus settled his affairs, he proceeded to invade Apuleia, and meeting with scarcely any opposition, he soon got possession of that country; but as the season was far advanced,

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1211.

he put his troops into winter quarters, and fixed his court at Capua. The Pope, who had hitherto only threatened, began now to shew more evident marks of his displeasure. He sent Gregory, Cardinal of St. Mary's, into Tuscany, with orders to bring back into the bosom of the church the cities that had joined Otho; and despatched the Abbot of Morimont to the imperial head-quarters, to remonstrate in forcible terms against the invasion of the states of Frederick. But the emperor was not to be turned from his purpose. He had determined on driving Frederick from the continent, and even threatened to deprive him of Sicily. The Pope was anxious for peace, and offered voluntarily to forgive all the injuries which he had already done to the states of the church, provided he would restore to the Holy See and to the young king the provinces that had formerly belonged to them respectively. But Otho would not agree to these terms, and Innocent found that he must employ other means to obtain what he required. He therefore, with the usual formalities, pronounced the sentence of excommunication, and wrote to the Patri-

Offers terms of  
peace,

Which are rejected,  
and sentence of ex-  
communication pro-  
nounced :

archs of Aquilia and Gradon, the Archbishops of Ravenna and Genoa, and to the clergy of Milan, commanding them to have it promulgated throughout the Italian states; and he ordered his legate, the Bishop of Albano, to punish canonically the bishops and clergy who refused to obey this mandate.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1211.

It is published in Italy,

Otho expressed himself greatly offended at this proceeding of the Pope, and declared that he would treat as guilty of high treason all who dared to receive or obey any orders from the court of Rome, touching the sentence of excommunication that had been pronounced against him and his adherents. This declaration however had little effect upon the bishops of Italy, and still less upon those of Sicily. The latter, during the minority of Frederick, had increased their revenues and extended their privileges to a degree that was almost incompatible with the royal dignity, and they knew that if Otho succeeded in conquering the kingdom, there would be an end of their usurpations; they, therefore, were most zealous in publishing the orders they received from Rome, and fulminated the sentence from their pulpits,

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1311.

And in Germany.

Otho's partiality to  
foreigners one cause  
of discontent.

without any regard to the consequences. Innocent, who was anxious above all things to have the emperor removed from Italy, wrote to the Archbishops of Mentz and Magdeburg, to desire that they would publish to the German empire the curse he had pronounced against its sovereign. He knew that such a proceeding would affect the consciences of many, and might detach some from his interests; and his priests performed their duty so well, that several princes were induced to throw off their allegiance, and combined with another cause of discontent, which we have now to mention, it produced a very serious conspiracy.

Otho had spent a great part of his youth and some of the happiest of his maturer years in England. His name was enrolled among her nobility, and the people he considered as his countrymen and friends. He had therefore prevailed upon many to accompany him to Germany, and had provided for several of the younger nobility and clergy, by investing them with the fiefs of his rebellious subjects, or granting them the benefices of his refractory prelates. This partiality to foreigners had been

long complained of by the Germans, and in the present state of his affairs, added to the number of his adversaries.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1211.

The King of Bohemia, the Duke of Austria, the Duke of Bavaria, and the Landgrave of Thuringen, leagued together, and joining the discontented, formed a party, whose object it was to remove him from the throne. They made the oath which they had taken when Frederick was a child in his cradle a pretence for their present conduct, and proposed to have the election of that prince renewed and confirmed. The Archbishop of Mentz, to favour their views, had called an assembly of the states. The avowed object of the meeting was to deliberate on the propriety of deposing Otho, but though every effort was made to induce the majority of the princes to join in this conspiracy, he did not succeed, and they separated without coming to any decision. He renewed, however, the sentence of excommunication, and wrote to the bishops in Upper Germany, directing them to publish it from their pulpits. Henry Count Palatine and the Duke of Brabant were greatly enraged at this conduct of

Several princes combine against Otho.

Conduct of the Archbishop of Mentz:

Punished by Henry Count Palatine, and the Duke of Brabant:



**BOOK V.** the Archbishop, and they entered his diocese  
**A.D. 1311.** at the head of their troops, where they burnt  
 and destroyed the whole country, though they  
 could not succeed in taking him prisoner.

The Duke of Brabant left the Count Palatine to watch over his brother's interests in the city of Mentz, while he proceeded to invest Liege, which, through the intrigues of its bishop, had also revolted. He got possession of the city, and as the clergy and inhabitants hesitated to renew their oath of allegiance, delivered it up to pillage. He was preparing to treat the whole province in the same manner, when it was represented to him that it was unjust to punish an entire people for the crime of one man: that the majority did not approve of the conduct of their bishop, and were ready to renew their oath of fidelity to Otho; and in an assembly called for that purpose, the Duke received the allegiance of all ranks of the community.

Conduct of the Bishop of Liege also punished.

When the Bishop of Liege understood what had taken place in his capital, he excommunicated the Duke of Brabant; and the Pope not only ratified the sentence, but laid the whole

of the duchy under an interdict, and annulled the oath of allegiance which the inhabitants of Liege had taken.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1211.

The Holy Father at this time began to extend his operations against Otho, and that it might appear to the world that his opposition to the reigning sovereign was founded on justice, and had for its object the welfare of the Catholic Church, he got the Archbishop of Mentz, the King of Bohemia, and the Landgrave of Thuringen to present a memorial, wherein they prayed him to provide a remedy for various evils under which they said the church and the empire had suffered for a long time. This memorial was made a pretext for assembling a general council at Rome, where Innocent came prepared to criminate the emperor, and to recommend his deposition. He stated that Otho was not to be moved from his career of plunder by any church censures, and therefore they, the cardinals and churchmen assembled, must deliberate on the means most proper for subduing so rebellious a son.

The Pope calls a council at Rome.

This council decided as a matter of course, that he had been guilty of perjury, and was in open rebellion against the church; that he had

Their decision against Otho.

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1212.

forfeited the crown, and they adjudged that he ought to be deposed. The Pope accordingly pronounced the sentence of deposition, and further declared that the church would take under her special protection all who should furnish money or any other succours for the subjugation of Otho, of Saxony, who was the enemy of religion, and the disturber of the peace of the empire. He announced to the princes of Germany, that as he had rendered himself unworthy of the imperial crown, they ought to acknowledge the rights of the young Frederick, the legitimate heir of his father, Henry VI. His letters were addressed to the Archbishop of Mentz and the Bishop of Spire, who immediately called a meeting at Colentz, where the Archbishop of Treves, the King of Bohemia, the Dukes of Austria and Bavaria, and the Landgrave of Thuringen attended, and proclaimed Frederick.

Frederick pro-  
claimed emperor :

Otho, who was still occupied in the conquest of Calabria and Apuleia, was well informed of all that took place in Germany, but as he had every confidence in his brother Henry and the Duke of Brabant, he left it to them to maintain his interests. Henry took the field with a nu-

merous army, and a second time entered the territories of the Archbishop of Mentz, the principal enemy of his brother, and laid that country waste. A number of the Lombard cities, however, abandoned the interests of Otho, and their example was followed by the greater part of the Italian nobles, among whom the Marquis Azo of Verona took the lead, so that the whole empire became involved in a civil war. In this state of his affairs, he determined to return to the North, and in his passage through Italy he found the city of Bologna still faithful; but as Cremona, Ferrara, Genoa, and Pavia had hoisted the standard of rebellion, the ban of the empire was put in force against them, and they were publicly denounced as rebels. The cities of Lodi and Milan, though they had not openly declared any hostile sentiments, received him coldly; and when his army passed the Po, which was covered with ice, an attempt was made by the Count of Sancta Flora to mislead them, and the emperor had a very narrow escape from being drowned. The treason, however, was discovered in time to save the troops, and the

BOOK V.

A.D. 1812.

The Italian cities  
join his party.

Otho returns to  
Germany:

BOOK V.      faithless guide suffered the punishment which  
 A.D. 1212.      his crime merited.

After passing the Alps, Otho took the route  
 of Nuremburg, where on his arrival he held  
 an assembly of the chiefs of his party. He ex-  
 plained to them in forcible terms his differences  
 with the court of Rome: the designs of that  
 court against the authority of the emperor,  
 and the motives which had induced him to act  
 as he had done. He added, that the Pope's  
 hatred against him personally was known to all  
 the world, but that Innocent had only become  
 his enemy when he found that he would not  
 sacrifice the rights of the empire. "If they  
 were disposed," he said, "to set aside their so-  
 vereigns when the Pope willed it, the right of  
 electing, which belonged to the princes of the  
 empire, would be completely invalidated, as  
 they must submit for the future to his dicta-  
 tion. Take courage," continued Otho, "and  
 do not suffer yourselves to be made the play-  
 things of the court of Rome, nor the slaves of  
 the Italians. It belongs to you, and not to  
 the Bishop of Rome, to dispose of the go-  
 vernment of the Teutonic kingdom. You

Holds a diet at Nu-  
 remburg:

His address to the  
 princes:

are the immediate guardians of its privileges, and as you have the power of electing, so must you have the power of deposing the emperor. I am ready for my part to resign the authority with which you have invested me, if you decide that I am incapable or unworthy of holding it ; but as it is your duty to watch over the rights of the empire, and to preserve them in all their integrity, it becomes you to take measures to appease the troubles that now divide us, and not to suffer our rights and our liberties to be usurped by strangers." This address made some impression upon the assembled nobles, and many repented of their conduct, and returned to the emperor. They declared war against the Landgrave of Thuringen and the Archbishop of Mentz, but did not follow it up with any degree of vigour.

BOOK V.

A.D 1212.

*Its effect.*

Otho at this time consummated his marriage with Beatrix, who died on the fourth day after she had joined him.

The princes who supported Frederick had long been urging him to appear among them, and his presence had now become absolutely necessary to counteract the efforts made by Otho to subdue their party. He therefore ap-

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1212.

Frederick proceeds  
to Germany :

Arrives at Con-  
stance.

Desertion of the  
Count of Hapsburg.

pointed his young queen Regent of Sicily, and set out for Rome. The Pope received him with great magnificence, and having a fleet in readiness, sent him by sea to Genoa. In passing through Lombardy, that treacherous people shewed the same joy at his appearance that they had done at the first visit of his rival, and the cities opened their gates and received him everywhere as the sovereign of their free choice. The passes of the Alps were well guarded, but notwithstanding this vigilance, Frederick escaped and arrived in safety at Constance. Otho was not more than three leagues distant from that city when he heard of his arrival, and having about two hundred horse at his command, he made an attempt to take it by surprise. But he found the gates shut and guarded, and as he was not in a condition to commence a siege, or to take it by assault, he was obliged to retire. The Count of Hapsburg, who had shared so largely in the confidence of Otho, and who owed the whole of his wealth and his influence to that prince, was amongst the first to desert him. He joined Frederick at Constance, and partook of the rewards that were

held out to those who should join the young king.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1212.

The Pope sent letters by Frederick to the Archbishops of Mentz and Magdeburg, who were appointed his legates, and commanded them to prohibit all persons from receiving any favour from the hands of the emperor, whom he designated a tyrant, as it would involve them in his sentence of excommunication; but to extend their favour and protection to every person who should be induced to take up arms against him. These threats and promises, with the presence of Frederick, diminished greatly the supporters of Otho in various parts of the country, and Frederick found his army in a short time sufficiently numerous to enable him to leave Constance. He proceeded first to Colmar, and then descending the Rhine, repaired to Vancouleurs, where he had arranged a meeting with Philip Augustus, King of France.

The Pope sends letters to the German princes.

Philip had always been the decided enemy of Otho, because he had the support of his enemies and rivals the English, and was glad of an opportunity of renewing an alliance with one who could effectually promote his views.

The King of France declares for Frederick.



## BOOK V.

A.D. 1212.

The Pope intrigues  
in England.

Innocent III. had been playing the same game with John, King of England, that he had with Otho, Emperor of Germany. John had been deposed, and his kingdom given to Philip, King of France, in perpetual right, "*when once,*" adds the old chronicle, "*he had dethroned the present possessor.*" But though the pusillanimity of the king saved the nation from the horrors of an invasion, it could not prevent a war. Philip had spent many months and much treasure in preparing for the conquest of England, and a war against this country was as popular in France then, as it has ever been in more modern times; when he communicated, therefore, to his council of war the orders he had received from the Pope, announcing his having made peace with John, they unanimously agreed to support him in his enterprise, notwithstanding any censure they might incur in disobeying the commands of the court of Rome. The Earl of Flanders however refused to join in the expedition against England, which he considered both unjust and impracticable. He had formerly adhered to the emperor Otho, and therefore considered himself in alliance with the Eng-

lish. Philip in consequence directed his arms first against the Earl. His fleet was ordered to sail towards the coast of Flanders, while his army advanced by land; but King John no sooner received intelligence of these preparations against his friend, than he sent his fleet to sea under the command of his natural brother the Earl of Salisbury, and the Counts of Holland and Bologne, who fortunately surprised the French admiral in the port of Damme, and took three hundred of his transports laden with provisions and warlike stores, and burnt and sunk the remainder.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1213.

King John declares  
in favour of Otho.

The French fleet  
destroyed by the  
English.

After that victory, which compelled the French king to return to his capital, the Earl of Salisbury proceeded to the head-quarters of the emperor, and in a diet held at Cologne, it was agreed that Otho should join England and Flanders in the war against France, and as he had become a widower by the sudden death of the princess Beatrix, it was resolved that he should marry the daughter of the Earl of Flanders. As John had a large army in Brittany, the time was considered favourable for commencing the war in the Low Countries, and the im-

Otho marries the  
daughter of the Earl  
of Flanders.

BOOK V.      perial army was ordered to assemble in the  
 neighbourhood of Valenciennes, where after  
 A.D. 1214.      his marriage, the emperor joined them.

Commences the war  
 against France:

In consequence of the war in Poitou and Brittany, the King of France had not more than sixty thousand men under his command on the northern frontier; he therefore visited his fortified places, and putting them into good order, fixed his head-quarters at Peronne. From thence he advanced to Tournay, where he was joined by the Duke of Lorraine and a large reinforcement. Otho, who had also put his troops in movement, encamped first at Mortagne, within three leagues of his enemy. Next day, which was Sunday, the French moved in the direction of Lisle, and as soon as the emperor understood that they were in motion, he left his encampment and advanced in pursuit. When it was stated to Philip that the imperialists were close upon his rear, and evidently intending to offer battle, he would not believe it, as it was not then customary for christian armies to engage on the sabbath. He sent, however, a body of light cavalry to observe their motions, and when it was reported that their army was advancing in bat-

27th July.  
 Collects an army in  
 the Low Countries.

the array, Philip halted, and called a council of war. The question was, whether he should turn about and engage, or continue his march. The majority were of opinion that they should continue their advance, until they had passed the bridge of Bouvines, which was about half-way between Tournay and Lisle, and that they should offer battle on the other side of the river.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1214.

The imperialists, in passing a rivulet, were obliged to deploy in the direction of Tournay, which led the enemy to believe that they intended to march upon that place, and that they had no intention of giving battle; but the Chevalier Guérin, who commanded a division of the French cavalry, saw that it was only a feint, and he maintained that they would attack the rear-guard as soon as the army was thrown into disorder, as it necessarily must be in passing the bridge. This proved to be the fact, for the French army had no sooner commenced defiling, than it was announced to the King that the enemy had arrived, and had already begun to skirmish in the rear of his army. The Viscount of Melun did all he could to harass the imperialists, and the king re-

The armies manoeuvre in presence of each other.

## BOOK V.

---

A.D. 1314.

calling the troops that had passed the bridge, returned upon Otho at the head of his cavalry. The emperor was astonished at the suddenness of his appearance, and changing the order of his march, attempted to gain some heights which were on his right by an extension of his front. Philip extended his line in proportion to that of the enemy, and when the action commenced, each army occupied a front of nearly half a league.

The French had the advantage in point of ground; the sun was behind them, and shone strongly in the face of the imperialists; but the emperor found there was no time to change his position, as the French used so much diligence in bringing up their troops; he was therefore obliged to issue orders for immediately commencing the engagement. The Count of Bologne commanded his right wing, which was principally composed of the English auxiliaries. The Earl of Flanders commanded the left wing, and the centre was under the orders of the Duke of Brabant, who was lieutenant-general of the army. The Earl of Holland and the Duke of Limbourg had charge of the imperial standard.

Notwithstanding that the imperialists were greatly superior in numbers to the French, Philip kept up the same extent of front, that he might not be taken in flank; and as soon as the arrangements were completed on both sides, the trumpets sounded the charge, and the action commenced. Both armies were well led on, and every inch of ground was disputed.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1314.

The battle of the  
Spurs.

The Germans, in a desperate charge, broke through the enemy's first line, and made for the royal standard, where the king fought in person. The flower of the French nobility had rallied round their prince, but notwithstanding their efforts, a strong column, commanded by the Duke of Brabant, cut their way through the opposing host, and surrounding the king on all sides, his danger became extreme. A German soldier struck him a blow with a battle-axe, which had nearly proved fatal, as it brought him to the ground. The emperor and the Duke of Limburg, who had hastened to the spot, were about to take him prisoner, when a gallant squadron of French gentlemen, who had resolved to sacrifice their lives or save their sovereign, opened a passage with their swords, and carried him off in tri-

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1214.

umph. Stephen, surnamed Longshanks, was killed by the emperor at the side of Philip, and Peter Tristan, another hero of this day, dismounted during the hottest of the contest, and gave his horse to the king. As other reinforcements were soon brought to this point, the emperor was obliged to give way : his first line was now thrown into disorder ; and his guard getting into confusion, a French officer seized hold of his horse's bridle, and was in the act of leading him off the field, when another making a thrust at him, his sword was bent against his cuirass. A second blow fell upon the horse's eye, and the animal rearing in agony made a desperate plunge, which broke the rein, and in a moment it carried him safe from among the crowd of enemies that surrounded him. But he had scarcely reached his own lines, when the horse fell dead. He mounted another, and did all he could to rally his broken squadrons, and to lead them to a second charge. But it was in vain, the panic had become general, and his troops were scattered and flying in every direction. Otho, who had much of the desperate bravery of his uncle Richard Cœur-de-Lion, could not

The French gain a  
decided victory.

he prevailed upon to leave the field. He turned and faced the victorious enemy, but the few that supported him were soon surrounded, and the whole would have been made prisoners, had not a few Germans that remained unbroken hastened to their rescue, and brought him off in some measure by force. He retired at last with the Duke of Brabant, and they did not halt till they had reached Brussels.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1814.

Otho retires to Brussels.

Such was the issue of the celebrated battle of Bouvines or the *Spurs*, so named from the number of knights who fell in the engagement. It was one of the most splendid victories that France ever achieved. The imperialists lost more than thirty thousand men in killed, wounded, and prisoners, among whom the most distinguished were the Counts of Tecklenburg, Tremona, Flanders, Bologne, Dumar-tin, and Holland, and the English Earl of Salisbury. Twenty-five bannerets were taken prisoners, and an immense number of gentlemen of inferior rank. The French lost a great number of troops, but very few men of any rank.

Number of princes killed in the action.

The King of France, after the action, proceeded to Bupaum, where he found the Counts



BOOK V.

A.D. 1214.

of Bologne and Flanders; the latter he sent to Paris, but the former was shut up in the Castle of Peronne, on account of his having written to the emperor after he was a prisoner, to desire he would continue the war. The magnificent chariot which carried the eagle and the imperial standard, fell into the hands of the conqueror, who sent them to Frederick; and as the loss of this important battle put an end to the authority of Otho, Frederick may be said from that moment to have obtained possession of the empire. The princes who had hitherto held out against him, flocked to his court, and as he was anxious to conciliate all parties, his wealth and his favours were distributed to all who sought them.

Otho left Brussels, and with the empress retired to Cologne, but that city, though it felt for his misfortune, was afraid to give him shelter; they made him a present of six hundred marks of silver, which he carried to Brunswick. Though there was little appearance of his ever regaining the government of the empire, he still had many friends, and his brother Henry, Count Palatine, whose power was very great, adhered firmly to his

interests. Many of the cities of Italy took up arms in his behalf, and during the first years of the reign of Frederick II. the Guelph and Gibelline factions divided that unhappy country. The fourth crusade, however, had carried off the greater part of the forces of Germany, and in their absence hostilities in some measure ceased. Otho remained quietly at Brunswick, and apparently took little interest in public affairs. He found he was abandoned by those who ought to have supported him, and he would not humble himself to regain their favours.

BOOK V.

A.D. 1218.

Frederick's party increases.

Otho retires to Brunswick, and lives in retirement.

At the commencement of the summer of 1218 he had retired with the empress to the Castle of Hertzberg, and soon after his arrival was seized with an inflammatory fever, which ending in dysentery, speedily proved fatal. He expired on the 15th of May, in the forty-third year of his age and tenth of his reign from the death of Philip. His body was transported to Brunswick, and deposited in the church of St. Blaze, by the side of that of his father.

A.D. 1218.

His death,

The great haughtiness of this prince was the cause of his ruin. He never could descend to mingle with the princes of the empire, or to

## BOOK V.

A.D. 1218.

And character :

court their suffrages. He considered the imperial rank as his birth-right, and his manners were so unbending, that often in the merest trifles, he gave serious offence to his most attached friends. His attachment to England was the great cause of the enmity of France, and the union of that power with his more politic rival, proved the complete ruin of his influence in Germany. As a child, he had been much noticed and caressed by his uncle Richard in England, and as he grew up he acquired the perfect confidence and friendship of that prince. When released from his imprisonment with the emperor, he proceeded directly to London. His uncle gave him the Earldom of York and the Duchy of Poictou, and endeavoured to procure for him a more splendid establishment in the kingdom of Scotland. At one time he had arranged with King William that his nephew should marry the Princess Margaret, and some chronicles assert that Otho was named as William's successor in the kingdom, but the nobles objecting to the succession of a daughter while there were male heirs to the crown, it was settled that on their marriage they should have the

Duchy of Northumberland and the county of Carlisle. The death of Henry VI., however, put an end to his union with the Scottish princess, as the invitation of his party called him to the throne of the German empire. By his last will he constituted his brother Henry his heir, and appointed him the guardian of the Brunswick possessions. He directed him also to deliver over the regalia of the empire to the prince duly elected to the crown, and on no account to receive either money or other reward for giving them up. He assigned the Castle of Harlungeburg as the residence of the empress who survived him; but this princess did not remain long in Germany, she returned to Brabant, and spent the remainder of her days among her own relations. Otho, as we have seen, was twice married, first to Beatrix, the daughter of Philip of Swabia, his rival in the empire, and secondly to Mary of Brabant; but he left no issue by either.

Henry, Count Palatine, took possession of Brunswick immediately on his brother's death; and as he hesitated in delivering up the regalia, a complaint was made to the Pope, who wrote to desire that he would make no further delay,

BOOK V.

A.D. 1318.

His last will.

History of Henry  
Count Palatine re-  
sumed.

BOOK V.  
—

His death.

A.D. 1227.

or the Palatinate should be laid under an interdict. He accordingly repaired to a diet which was held at Goslar, and in the presence of the assembled princes, delivered them to Frederick, who received him very graciously, and confirmed him in his hereditary possessions, and in the various fiefs which he held of the empire. From this time Henry appears to have remained in domestic retirement. He died in 1227, and as he left no heirs male, the Palatinate reverted to the Emperor, and was bestowed on the House of Bavaria.

This prince, during his life, retained the title of Duke of Saxony, as well as that of Count Palatine, though he is sometimes styled Duke of Brunswick. He was twice married. His first wife Agnes, heiress of the County Palatine, died in 1204, and his second, also Agnes, was of the house of Lansberg. By the first he had two daughters. The eldest married the Marquis of Baden, and the youngest the son of the Duke of Bavaria. He left no issue by his second wife. His body was buried in the tomb of his father at Brunswick.

History of William  
Prince of Luneburg.

We must now return to William, the youngest son of Henry the Lion, whose name, though



*Engraved by R. Hancock*

**WILLIAM,**

**PRINCE OF BRUNSWICK & LUNEBURG.**

*Born at the Palace of Winchester 1811. Died at Lüneburg, 12 December 1837.*

*Drawn from the Effigy of the Prince in the Church at Lüneburg*

*In 1839 by W. James Esq. of 11, Abchurch Lane, London.*



BOOK V.  

---

less illustrious than that of his elder brother's, is the most important to this history, as it was through him that the male line was continued.

William, as we have stated, was born at Winchester, when his father was an exile in England, and his early years were spent at the court of his grandfather. In 1194 he was delivered over to Leopold, Duke of Austria, as a hostage for the payment of his uncle's ransom, and he remained at Vienna for upwards of twelve months. The Duke on his death-bed declared him at liberty to return to his father, but to this the emperor offered some objections, and he was further detained till the death of Henry VI. in 1197. Henry the Lion left him by his last will the cities of Luneburg and Lauenburg, and in the chronicles of his day he is usually styled *the Prince of Luneburg*. In 1200 he accompanied his brother Henry to England, and remained for some time in that country with his uncle. In 1202, when he was eighteen years of age, he married at Hamburg, Helen, the daughter of Waldemar the First, king of Denmark, and the following year he met his brothers Henry and Otho at Paderborne, when a division of their patrimonial states was

He accompanies his  
brother to England:

His marriage,



BOOK V.  
—

arranged, and he received for his portion the provinces of Luneburg, Lechlenberg, Ganders-  
them, Geselwerden, and Osen. His life was  
spent in retirement, and in the government of  
his hereditary domains; and he seldom took  
any part in the civil wars which afflicted Ger-  
many during the life-time of his brother the  
emperor. Some authors have given him the  
surname of the *Long Sword*, and in his effigy  
he is sculptured with this weapon in his hand.  
But others assert that in giving him this desig-  
nation, he has been confounded with William,  
Earl of Salisbury, the bastard son of Henry II.

And death.

William of Luneburg died in 1213, at the  
early age of 29, and left one son, an infant, un-  
der the guardianship of his brother Henry, and  
his widow, the Princess Helen. His remains  
were interred in a vault which he had caused  
to be built in the church of St. Michael's con-  
vent at Luneburg, where many of his illustrious  
ancestors had found their last repose; and his  
memory was so dear to the people of Lune-  
burg, that for many years after his death they  
were accustomed to decorate his tomb with  
flowers on the 12th of December, the anni-  
versary of that mournful event.

The Abbot of St. Michael's represents him as being "*carne quidem crassus*," but of a devout and peaceable turn of mind. A prince who was content with what God had given him, and who had no ambition to enter into the quarrels or partake of the spoils of others. His only son being as yet a child, the government of the states of Luneburg devolved upon the Emperor and the Count Palatine, and they were managed by the latter till his death.

Henry, on the death of Otho, took possession of the whole of the Brunswick territories, to the great prejudice of his young nephew; but having lost his own son, and there being no longer any prospect of a male heir in his family, he had regard to the legitimate claims of the only male descendant of the Guelphic family, and declared Otho, the son of William of Luneburg, his heir, not only in the allodial domains of Brunswick, Luneburg, and their dependencies, but of all the fiefs which he held in the bishopricks of Bremen, Verden, Minden, Magdeburg, Halberstadt, Hildesheim, and many others. The Emperor Frederick, however, whose enmity to the Guelphic family

**BOOK V.** — continued undiminished, no sooner heard of this arrangement, than he entered into a negotiation with the daughter of the Count Palatine; and that he might have a pretence for invading the Brunswick territories on the death of Henry, bought from the Margravine of Baden her claims, as the eldest daughter, to the succession of her father. But the fidelity of the citizens of Brunswick defeated these intentions, and preserved to the legitimate heir of their ancient sovereign this small remnant of their territorial possessions.

We have now brought to a close the more ancient history of the Guelphic family. We have endeavoured to trace, and we hope successfully, the princes of that house through the various changes and revolutions of more than seven hundred years; and though we have carefully avoided noticing the absurd and fabulous statements of many genealogists, we trust we have omitted nothing in their domestic annals that has appeared either well substantiated or worthy of being recorded.

The reader will find in the Notes and Illustrations, which are attached to this volume, the

authorities from which we have drawn our information, and will be able to judge for himself whether or not we have given a just interpretation of their views of the subject.

---

BOOK V.

---



**NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.**

1

**NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.**



southern shores of Europe; and, as they gained experience in war, they were able to act as regular invaders, and their operations were no longer confined to the coasts of the seas they had navigated as pirates. After a long struggle with the Roman power, they succeeded in establishing themselves on the left bank of the Rhine; and the victory obtained by Clovis over Syagrius the lieutenant of the emperor, at Soissons, in 486, laid the foundation of their permanent dominion in Gaul.

The reader, it is presumed, is too well acquainted with the history of the decline and fall of the Roman empire to require in this place any account of the origin and history of the Goths and Huns: the first, it is supposed, had long been natives of Europe; the latter had only newly arrived from Asia.

Note 3, p. 9.

*Among the nations, &c.*

Mr. Gibbon has given the History of Attila at great length, and with great accuracy; but it is to PAUL, the deacon, a Lombard writer of the eighth century, and SIDONIUS, Bishop of Clermont, who died about the end of the fifth, that we must have recourse for a list of the Gothic tribes that marched under the banner of the Hun. The Scyrri are mentioned by both these writers, while PRISCUS PANNITES, a Byzantine author, who lived at the court of Theodosius the younger, (as quoted by SUIDAS in the "Historia Attalica,") characterizes Edico or Ethico (by Gibbon written Edicon), the prince of the SCYRRI and HERULI as a "vir Scythe qui maximas res, in bello gesserit;" and expressly states that "Edico bello clarus; genere Hunnus Attilæ ΕΥΓΕΝΕΙΟΥ erat."—Vide Origin. Guelf. Vol. I. p. 15.

Note 4, p. 12.

*The historian who has given, &c.*

JORNANDES, a learned barbarian, who was, at first, secretary to Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths, and afterwards Bishop of Ravenna, has left us the most authentic history of his nation; and it is from his work, entitled *De Rebus Geticis*, which I found in the king's library at Hanover, that I have

translated the account given in the text. In his 53rd and 54th chapters, we have a detailed account of that battle, in which the Primates Edico and Guelph (Wlph) commanded the Scyrri and their allies, and which proved so fatal to them. It was fought on the banks of a river named *Bollia*, in Pannonia.

The ancient kingdom of Pannonia comprehended a great part of what is now known as the kingdom of Hungary; it was bounded by the Danube on the north, the Saave on the South, with Noricum (the Tyrol) on the west, and Mysia (Asia-Minor) on the east: the river,—named *Bollia*, by Jornandes,—must have been one of those tributary streams that fall into the Saave or the Mur, in their passage through the country to join the Danube.

*This, though a matter of curiosity, &c.*

Note 5, p. 13.

That Odoacer was the son of Edico, is proved by the Chronicle of Eugippius, as quoted by Valesius. “Odoacer (says the author of this Chronicle) vero cujus supra ferimus mentionem mox deposito Augustulo de imperio factus est Rex, mansitque in Regno annos tridicem cujus Pater Edico dictus.”

*Anulphus, or Guelph, the brother of Odoacer, &c.*

Note 6, p. 19.

That this is correct, is also proved by Eugippius, in his life of St. Severine, chap. 465. His words are: Postea audiens Odachar, Fredricum ad propria revertisse; statum fratrem suum ANULFUM misit cum multis exercitibus; ante quem denuo fugiens Fredricum ad Theodoricum Regem qui tunc apud novam Civitatem Provinciæ Misæ morabatur profectus est. Anulfo verò precepto Fratris admonito universos jussit ad Italiam migrare Romanos.—Vide Orig. Guelf. Vol. I.

*Anulphus left one son, &c.*

Note 7, p. 20.

PROCOPIUS, in his Annals of the Gothic war, mentions this prince, whom he names Oldogan and Olfigandus.—Vide Procop. de bello Gothico, lib. 3.

Note 8, p. 23.

*Uligagus, his son.*

The same author mentions Uligagus, as engaged in the Persian war; and though he does not say, in express terms, that he was the son of Olfigandus, he informs us that he was "de gente Herulus." In the letters of the Roman general, addressed to Childebert, king of Austrasia, Olfigandus is also mentioned, as a "vir magnificus," sent in command of the Austrasian army to the assistance of the Romans against Autharis, king of Lombardy. This prince was the son of Uligagus, and the father of Caduinus, who, as stated in the text, succeeded him in the command of the Austrasian troops.—Vide Orig. Guelficæ, Vol. I. p. 30.

Note 9, p. 31.

*In his latter years this prince, &c.*

Clothaire II. had the laws of the Franks, Germans, and Bavarians collected by men of experience and learning, and his son, Dagobert, caused them to be reduced into one regular and uniform code. The preface to this collection states, that the king had ordered these laws: "Claudio, Chadocudo-Magno, et Agelofo renovâsse et omnia veterum legum in melius transtulisse." Caduinus, or Chadonius-Magnus et Referendarius, is mentioned by FREDIGARIUS, in his Chronicle, and in various other Chronicles of his time.

Note 10, p. 36.

*During the reign of Childeric, &c.*

The monk BOSELLANUS, who wrote the life of his patron St. Germain, informs us that, during the lifetime of the saint, "contiget ut moritur Caduinus Dux, et Bonifacius sive Cathicus in locum ejus succederet."—Vide Bobbelan. vita S<sup>i</sup> Germani, caput XI.

Note 11, p. 42.

*Griomald, a younger son, &c.*

PAUL, the deacon, in the second, third, and fourth chapters of his Hundredth Book of the Lombard Chronicles, has given us the history of the wars of Griomald and Bertarid, and of the attachment of the latter to the Guelphic prince;

and we have taken from the same author the statement given in the text relative to the son of Caduin and his successors.

*These sons were Ado or Adelbert, &c.*

Note 12, p. 45.

The same author (Paul Diacanus), in the sixth book of his Chronicles, chap. 8, says expressly, that Adelbert and Ruthard were brothers. His words are: "Fora Julii gubernorum autem Ducatum post hæc *Ado frater* Ruthardi loci servatoris nomine per annum et menses septem gubernavit." That Ado was a contraction for Adelbert, is proved by his signature to an old charter, which bears the "signum Adelberti qui Ado vocatur."

The history of the foundation of the monastery of Tegrense, in Bavaria, as given in the Origines Guelficæ, Vol. I., p. 59, is full and distinct as to the relationship between Adelbert and Otkarius.

*This abbey was still under the direction of St. Othmar, &c.*

Note 13, p. 51.

Othmar, the first abbot of the celebrated abbey of St. Gall, was a native of a province of Germany, which, at that period, belonged to Suabia. While yet a very young man, his mother carried him into Rætia, and he entered the service of Victor, the sovereign of that principality. Charmed with his manners and good conduct, the prince caused him to be educated for the priesthood, and he became so distinguished for his piety, that, when the lord of the territory in which the sacred remains of St. Gall, who died in 606, had been deposited, formed the resolution of establishing a monastery in honour of that saint, he was considered the fittest person to take charge of the infant establishment. Charles Martel having given his sanction, Othmar was demanded of the Count of Rætia, and, having been constituted abbot, he assembled a considerable community in a very short time. This abbey was but poorly endowed at first; but the celebrity of Othmar, and the sanctity of his monks, soon brought it into repute. Charles Martel and his successors contributed largely to its funds; and, notwithstanding the sacrilege of Ruthard and Count Warin,

it continued to flourish. In the days of the Saxon Henry, whose Cousin Bernhard was its abbot, the states of this monastery formed a rich principality, and its Abbot was honoured with the title of Prince of the Empire. In 1215, the abbot of St. Gall, attended by a thousand horse, took his seat in the diet at Strasburgh. The monks continued distinguished for their sanctity, and renowned for their learning; and the nobles of Germany sent their sons to it for instruction. It was distinguished as an academy as early as the year 800. From its cloisters many celebrated men were sent into the world, and it is to the monks of this order that we are indebted for much of the early history of Germany. Their library was reckoned the finest in Europe, but it was destroyed or dispersed among the Swiss Cantons, in the war of 1712; and the name is now all that remains of that once celebrated abode of religion and the muses.

Note 14, p. 62.

*Charlemagne, at whose court, &c.*

One of the greatest favourites and most esteemed of the literary companions of the emperor at this period was **ALCUIN**, or, as he is sometimes called, Flaccus Albinus, an Englishman of distinguished learning. The place of his birth has not been ascertained, but, according to his own account, he was nourished and educated at York. Under Egbert and Elbert, who taught a school in that city, and who were successively raised to the archiepiscopal chair, he acquired a knowledge of the Latin and Greek languages, and became acquainted with the elements of the Hebrew tongue; and when the last of the masters was made archbishop, Alcuin was left in charge of his school. In 768 he was sent to Rome by Archbishop Eadwald, the nephew of Elbert, to bring over his pall, and, on his return, met with Charlemagne at Pavia. The emperor was so much struck with the wisdom of his discourses, that he entreated him to remain at his court, or to return to it as soon as he had fulfilled his mission. Alcuin said he had no objection to do so, provided he could obtain the consent of his king and bishop, and was allowed occasionally to visit his native country. That boon was granted, and the requisite permission having

been obtained, he returned to the continent, and devoted himself to the instruction of his royal pupil, and the promotion of religion and general literature. His zeal was such, that he contributed greatly to the diffusion of knowledge, not only in the empire, but throughout all Europe. Preferments were heaped upon him by the emperor much against his will, and, at one time, it is said the abbeys and church possessions under his government maintained more than twenty thousand vassals; but, so far from his mind being corrupted by the accumulation of such wealth, he constantly besought the emperor to allow him to retire from public life, and to give up all these benefits. After repeated refusals, he was permitted to take up his abode in the abbey of St. Martin, at Tours, where he lived the life of a pious monk, and where he died in 804. In his retirement, theology formed his principal study; but he continued to enjoy the confidence and affection of Charlemagne to the last hour of his existence.

*This hero takes his place in history as Robert the Strong, &c.*

Note 15, p. 97.

There is no point in French history that has been more disputed by the antiquaries of that nation, than the birth and parentage of this hero, the undoubted ancestor of the Bourbon dynasty. Some have derived his origin from the Merovingian race of kings; others, again, make him of the royal house of Charlemagne, while a third party assert, that he formed his own fortune, and was not heard of before his gallant defence of Paris. But an old chronicle was discovered in the monastery of St. Benignus, at Dijon, which put the matter in some measure at rest; until, through the ignorance or inattention of the transcribers of that chronicle, a fresh cause of dispute arose, which the learned, as yet, have not been able to settle.

The following is an extract from the chronicle in question, as published by Dacier, *Spicilegii*, Tom. II. p. 377; Edition, 1750.

“ His diebus effera Danorum Natio tertiam Neustrasiis inflictura cladem advenit. Intulissetque maiorem superioribus, ni Hugo per Gallias Abbatis honore præditus eorum temerarios compescuisset ausus. Auxiliante namque Deo

parua manu tantas Hostium Phalanges fudit, ut vix superaret, qui nuntiare potuisset. Quo plaga humilitati (lege humiliati) Dani Gallias per aliquod spatium temporis quietas reliquerunt. Huic bello præfuit Ludouicus Rex. At Hugone ultimos vitæ suæ claudente soles; Ludouicoque Principe post administratum, ut diximus, biennio Regnum diem obeunte, Carolus, qui postea Simplex est dictus, in cunis sevum agens patre orbatus remansit. Supererant duo filii Roberti Andegavorum comitis, fr̄s Hugonis Abbatis Senior Odo dicebatur, Robertus Alter, Patrem nomine referens. Ex his maiores natu Odonem, Franci tutorem Pueri Regnique gubernatorem elegere, quia recidivi Normannorum excursus imminerebant."

This narrative is plain and distinct; but the difficulty has arisen about the proper interpretation of the contraction *fr̄s*. One of the transcribers wrote it *fratres*; while others, with a reference to the whole sentence, maintain, that it ought to be *fratris*. The latter is, certainly, the proper reading of the record, and gives the true genealogy of Robert the Strong.

Conrad of Guelph, the brother of the empress Judith, married Adelaide, a daughter of Louis le Debonnaire, by his first empress, Irmingarde, and by her had two sons, Conrad II., who succeeded him as count of Paris, and Hugh, who entered the church, and became, as the above extract informs us, abbot over all France; Robert, styled count of Anjou, was, according to this undoubted authority, *the brother of Hugh the Abbot*; consequently, he must have been a son of Conrad I., and nephew to Judith: but we have no proof that the princess Adelaide was his mother.

For the information of the unlearned reader, I subjoin a literal translation of the above extract from the Chronicle of Dijon, as furnished me by the Rev. John Williams, A.M., of Baliol College, Oxford, and Rector of the Edinburgh Classical Academy:—

"In these days arrived the ferocious Danes, intending to inflict a third calamity on the Neustrasians, and they would have inflicted a greater calamity than during their former invasions, had not Hugh, who held the rank of abbot over all

France, quelled their rash attempt: for, with God's assistance, he, with a small body of men, so utterly defeated the very numerous bands of the enemies, that there scarcely survived one able to relate their loss. But the Danes, being humbled by this blow, left France unmolested for a considerable space of time. Louis, the king, held the supreme command in this war; but Hugh closing the last days of his life, and king Louis dying, after (as I said before) discharging his regal duties for the space of two years, there remained Charles, who was afterwards surnamed the Simple, then a fatherless infant in the cradle. Odo, the elder, and Robert the younger, two sons of Robert, count of Anjou, *the brother of Hugh*, the abbot, were still alive: and of these the French selected Odo, the eldest, and made him the boy's tutor, and the governor of the kingdom, because they were afraid that the Normans would renew their invasions."

I gave the original to Mr. Williams, without informing him in any way of the point in dispute. His translation, therefore, fully corroborates the idea I had previously formed of the proper reading of the contracted word.

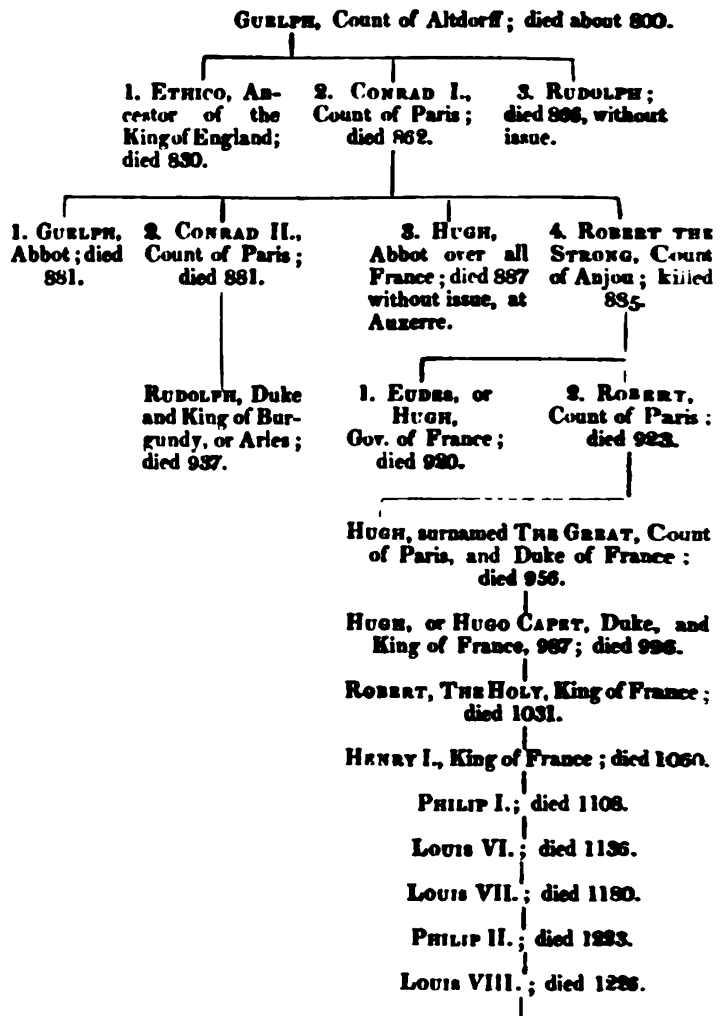
The eldest son of Robert is called Odo in the Chronicle, and by the French authors written Eudes, I have ventured to call him Hugh in the text.

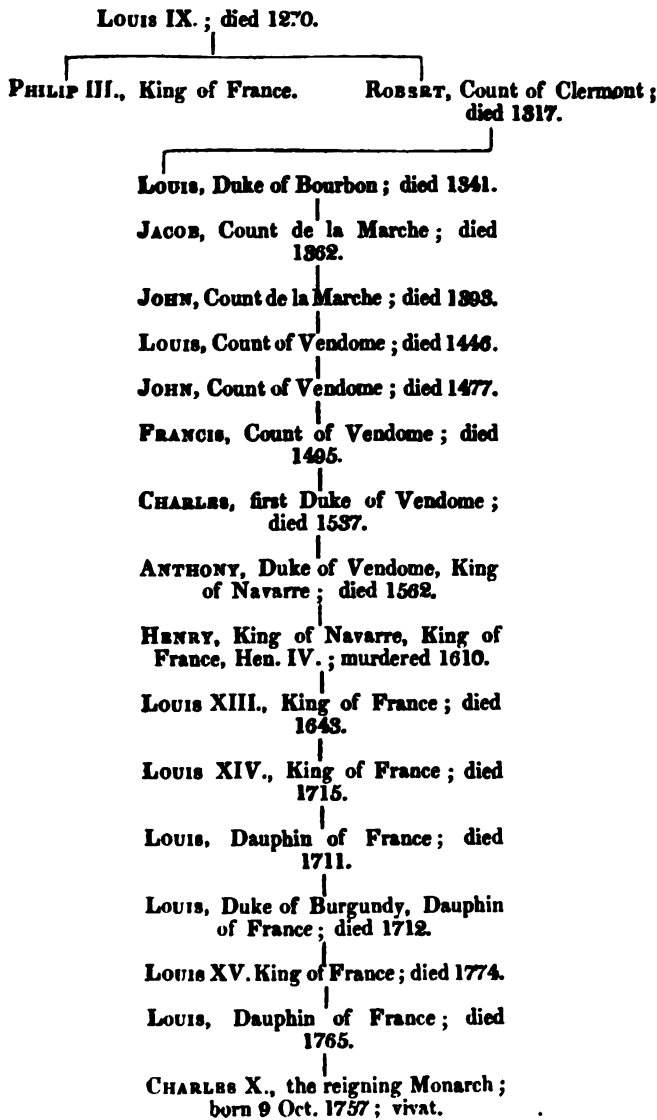
At the period referred to (A.D. 888), his cousin Rudolph had succeeded to the duchy of Burgundy; and this Odo, or Hugh, had received from the emperor the states which his uncle, Conrad II., held, as Count of Paris. He claimed, as we have seen, the kingdom of France, as the reward of his own and his father's valour; and, during the minority of Charles the Simple, held the government of that kingdom, as tutor of the young king. Dying without issue, he was succeeded by his younger brother, Robert, whose son Hugh became count of Paris about the year 930. This Hugh married, first, a daughter of the emperor Charles the Bald; secondly, a daughter of Edward I., or the elder king of England; and, lastly, Hatwig, daughter of Henry I., king of Germany: his only son, by the last princess, was Hugo Capet, who, on the failure of the Carlovingian race, became king of



France. The Bourbons, according to this statement, which we take to be correct, are, therefore, a junior branch of the House of Guelph; and, that this may appear more distinctly, we have added the following Table, in which their descent, from father to son, or in the male line, is traced, from Guelph, Count of Altdorff (A.D. 800) to Charles X. (A.D. 1825), a period of one thousand and twenty-five years.

#### A GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE HOUSE OF BOURBON.





Note 16, p. 100. *Every prince, &c. was ambitious of possessing a kingdom, &c.*

Many of [the kingdoms of Europe were formed or consolidated into what may be considered their present state during the ninth century. Egbert, the first king of England, as an undivided monarchy, died in 837. Alpin, esteemed the first king of the whole of Scotland, died in 833. Harald Harfagre, the first king of the united kingdom of Norway, began to reign in 868. Poland became a distinct sovereign state in 840. Hungary had its own monarch in 884. The kingdoms of Navarre and Arragon were consolidated about 876: Castile was added to them in 1000, and Leon in 1037; when the whole became known as the kingdom of Spain. Denmark did not exist as a united kingdom till 948; and Sweden continued separated into several petty states till 1200.

Note 17, p. 103. *The Guelphic princes who remained in Bararia, &c.*

A learned monk, belonging to the family monastery of Weingarten, has left a chronicle which contains a full and authentic account of the counts of Altdorf, dukes of Bavaria, from Guelph, who lived in the reign of Charlemagne, to Guelph, called the younger, the cousin of Henry the Lion. Duke of Spoleto, Prince of Sardinia, and lord of the territory of the Duchess Matilda, in Italy. This chronicle has been considered by Leibnitz, Scheideus, and others, as a most valuable record, and contains the account of Henry, first Duke of Upper Bavaria; and his father's seclusion, as given in the text. The history of the Italian branch of the Guelphic family, is taken from the Series of the Dukes and Marquisses of Tuscany, by Cosmo della Rena; the Acta Benedictina Mabillonii; the Antiquitates Estenses of Muratori; the Antiquitates Italicae, by the same learned Italian,—and from upwards of ninety charters and records quoted by the learned author of the Origines Guelficae; and others, preserved by Leibnitz, in his collection of documents relating to the history of the House of Brunswick, and the annals of Luitprand, Bishop of Cremona.

*Adelbert III. must, therefore, have been the son, &c.*

Note 18, p. 127.

This, after much research, I take to be the true origin of Adelbert III. I confess, however, that the subject is involved in much obscurity, and there is some evidence of his being the son of Guido, by a princess, prior to his union with Marozia. That he was preserved from the tyranny of Hugh, King of Italy, by Alberic, (the son of Marozia, by her first marriage,) is pretty certain: but there is no decisive evidence that they were half-brothers, or that Guido was ever married before he was united to Marozia. From Adelbert III. the succession is clear and distinct.

*The tribute and penance were ever afterwards duly rendered, &c.*

Note 19, p. 140.

This fact, mentioned by the Monk of Weingarten, and corroborated by various other chronicles, is one of the strongest possible evidences of the descent of the Counts of Altdorf, from Ruthard, governor of Germany.

In the remaining portion of the annals contained in this volume, we have followed the learned author of the *Origines Guelficæ*, and the most authentic histories of Germany, and have added various remarks from the family chronicles and original deeds and records.

*And gave the command in Upper Germany to his friend Rudolph, Count of Hapsburg, &c.*

Note 20, p. 359.

It is my intention in this note to give some account of all the existing imperial, regal, and princely houses in Europe; and as Rudolph of Hapsburg was the founder, so the first that claims our attention is the Imperial and Royal House of

#### A U S T R I A.

FRANCIS II., Emperor of Germany and Austria, King of Hungary, Bohemia, and Lombardy, &c., is the grandson of Maria Theresa, only surviving child and heiress of Charles VI., Emperor of Germany.

Rudolph, Count of Hapsburg, a nobleman of Alsace, and grandson of the Count mentioned in the text, obtained, by his personal merits, the throne of Germany, in 1273. His son, Albert I., was created Duke of Austria in 1286, and elected Emperor in 1298. Albert II., the third son of Albert I., was succeeded by his fourth son, Leopold, styled Duke of Suabia and Alsace. Frederick, the second son of Leopold, married Anne, daughter of that Frederick, Duke of Brunswick, who was elected Emperor, and murdered in 1400, and their son Sigismund died without issue. Ernest, the fourth son of Leopold, therefore carried on the male line of this family, and his son, Frederick III., was elected Emperor in 1440, and reigned till 1493. Maximilian I., the only son of Frederic III., married the heiress of Burgundy, and their son Philip, in right of his wife Johanna, only daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain, became King of Castile. The Emperors, Charles V. and Ferdinand I., were the sons of Philip and Johanna. Ferdinand I. married Anne, heiress of Bohemia, and sister to the King of Hungary; and their fourth son, Charles, was the father of Ferdinand II., elected King of Bohemia in 1618; and at the death of his cousin Matthias, Emperor of Germany, in 1619. Ferdinand III. was the eldest son of Ferdinand II., and was succeeded in the empire by his eldest son Leopold I. in 1658. Charles VI., second son of Leopold I., succeeded his elder brother in 1711, and was the last of the male line of Rudolph of Hapsburg. He married Elizabeth Christina, daughter of Louis Rudolph, Duke of Brunswick-Blankenburg; and their eldest daughter was the Empress Maria-Theresa, the grandmother of his present Majesty.

In the male line, Francis is descended from the Duke of Lorraine. His grandfather, Francis Stephen, was the twenty-third generation, in lineal male descent, from Gerard, Count of Alsace, created Duke of Lorraine by Henry III., in 1048. Leopold II., his Majesty's father, succeeded to the empire on the death of his elder brother, Joseph II., 30th Sept. 1790, and his Imperial Majesty began his reign on the 12th of July, 1792.

## RUSSIA.

NICHOLAS I., Emperor and Autocrat of all the Russias, King of Poland, and Grand Duke of Warsaw, is the third son of Paul I., by Sophia Dorothea Augusta, Princess of Wurtemberg.

The imperial family of Russia derives its origin, in the female line, from Ivan Vasilivitch, Prince of Zara, in 1462, and who died in 1505. But in the male line from George Romanzoff, whose grandson, Feodore Nikelevitch, married Maria-Johanna, grand-daughter and heiress of the first Prince of Zara. Michael Feodore, their son, was the father of Alexius, whose second wife, Natalia Nariskina, bore him a son named Peter, afterwards surnamed "The Great," the first prince that took the style and title of Emperor of all the Russias, 1721. Anne, the eldest daughter of Peter the Great, married Charles Frederick, Duke of Holstein Gottorp, and their son succeeded as Peter III., at the death of his cousin Peter II. The Emperor, Peter III., married Sophia Augusta Fredericka, eldest daughter of Christian, Duke of Anhalt Zerbst, the great-grandson of Rudolph, first duke of this branch of the Anhalt family, by Dorothea Hedwig, daughter of Julius, Duke of Brunswick Wolfenbüttel; and, as the Empress Catherine, she reigned over Russia, from 9th July, 1762, to 17th November, 1796, when she was succeeded by her only son, Paul I., the father of his present Majesty. Alexander I., the eldest son of Paul, succeeded to the Russian throne on the death of his father, 24th of March, 1801, and died on the 1st of December, 1825.

Distinguished as a man, and great as an emperor, Alexander I. seemed to live only for the welfare of his people and the benefit of mankind, and, had his days been prolonged, would have been better entitled to the epithet of GREAT than any monarch of his name that ever reigned.

## PORTUGAL AND THE BRAZILS.

- JOHN VI., Emperor and King of Portugal, the Algarves, and (1825) of the Brazils, is the only son of Don Pedro, fourth son of John V., King of Portugal, and Maria, daughter of Joseph I., who succeeded her father as Queen of Portugal in 1777.

The royal family of Portugal is the eldest branch from the Capetengian stem, consequently one of the Guelphic race. Hugo Capet, King of France, was succeeded in that kingdom by his eldest son, Robert I., and this Robert had a younger son of his own name, that he created Duke of Burgundy. Robert, the first Duke of Burgundy, and grandson of Hugo Capet, had two sons, Otho and Henry. Otho succeeded him in the Duchy of Burgundy, but Henry was sent by his cousin, Philip I., King of France, in the command of a christian army, to war against the Moors in Spain. He became a great favourite with Alfonzo VI., King of Castile, married his daughter Theresa, and was made sovereign count of the castle of Porto Cale, and of all the provinces his army had recovered or might recover from the Infidels.

Henry I., Count of Portugal, died in 1112, and his only son, Alfonzo, succeeded him. He continued the war against the Moors, and after a splendid victory on the plains of Ourique, 1142, where five of the principal captains of Ismael's host were slain, and their standards captured, his army proclaimed him king, and he was the first sovereign of Portugal. The legitimate male issue of Alfonzo I. became extinct in 1383, on the death of Ferdinand I.; but John, the illegitimate son of Ferdinand, a prince possessed of every great and distinguishing virtue, was called to the throne; but the male issue of John I. also failed in 1580, on the death of Henry I. The crown of Portugal was then claimed by Philip II. of Spain, as lineally descended from Beatrix, the eldest daughter of Ferdinand I., and in right of his queen, Maria, daughter of John III.

Philip took possession of the kingdom by force of arms,

and it was governed by the Spanish monarchs for a period of sixty years; but in 1640 John, Duke of Braganza, (grandson of Catherine, the daughter of Edward, Duke of Guimaræns, and youngest son of King Emanuel,) was called to the throne of his ancestors by the unanimous voice of the nation.

John IV., Duke of Braganza, and King of Portugal, was the seventh prince in lineal male descent from Alfonzo, an illegitimate son of King John I., created Duke of Braganza by his father in 1461. John IV. was succeeded by his sons, Alfonzo VI. and Peter II. Alfonzo had no issue, and the eldest son of Peter II. became John V. This prince married Anne, daughter of the Emperor Leopold I. Their eldest son became King of Portugal as Joseph I., and their third, Don Pedro, by marrying his niece Maria, the only daughter of Joseph I., became in her right king, and was the father of his present Majesty.

Don Pedro d'Allantara, born Prince of Beira, the eldest son of John VI., by Charlotte Joachima, daughter of Charles IV. of Spain, was proclaimed Emperor of the Brazils, and has been acknowledged as such by the powers of Europe. He married, in 1817, Caroline Josepha, eldest daughter of Francis II., Emperor of Germany.

#### FRANCE.

For the origin and descent of His Most Christian Majesty, Charles X., the reader is referred to the Note 15.

#### ENGLAND.

The reader will find a connected view of the origin and descent of His Most Excellent Majesty in the Genealogical Tables at the end of this volume.



## S P A I N.

**Ferdinand VII.**, King of Spain, &c. is the eldest son of **Charles IV.**, by **Louisa Maria Theresa**, Princess of Parma.

**Louis XIV.**, King of France, married, in 1660, **Maria Theresa**, daughter of **Philip IV.**, King of Spain. **Louis**, Dauphin of France, only son of **Louis XIV.** and the Princess **Maria Theresa**, died in 1711; but by the Princess **Maria Anne**, daughter of **Ferdinand**, Elector of **Bavaria**, he left two sons, **Louis**, who succeeded him as Dauphin of France, and **Philip**, created by his grandfather Duke of Anjou. When **Charles II.**, only son of **Philip IV.**, died and left neither male nor female heirs to the crown of Spain, **Louis XIV.** claimed it for his grandson, as the heir of **Charles's** eldest sister, and the successor nominated king by the deceased sovereign. The Emperor **Leopold** claimed it also for his son **Charles**, as the male heir of the Austrian family. **Charles** was crowned, and retained a disputed possession of the kingdom for several years; but when he succeeded his elder brother in the empire, he resigned all pretensions to the crown of Spain, and it was confirmed to **Philip**, Duke of Anjou, grandson of **Louis XIV.**

**Philip V.** had two sons: the eldest succeeded him in Spain, as **Ferdinand VI.**, and his second, **Charles**, was made King of **Naples** and the **Two Sicilies**. **Ferdinand VI.** had no issue, and was succeeded in Spain by his brother the King of **Naples**, who resigned that kingdom to his second son, and became King of Spain, as **Charles III.** The eldest son of **Charles III.** was **Charles IV.**, the late king, and the father of his present Majesty.

Previous to the succession of the **Bourbon** dynasty in Spain, the monarchs of that kingdom derived their origin from several Gothic princes or nobles that had survived the conquest of their country by the **Moors**, and had established independent monarchies, as they individually recovered a portion of the country from their infidel oppressors. The whole of the royal blood of Spain centred in **Johanna**, only child of **Ferdinand** and **Isabella**. Her marriage with **Philip** (1496), only

son of the Emperor Maximilian I., carried that blood to the House of Austria, which Maria Theresa transferred (1745) to the family of Lorraine.

#### NAPLES AND SICILY.

FRANCIS JANUARIUS JOSEPH, King of Naples and Sicily, is the eldest son of Ferdinand IV. and Maria Caroline, daughter of Francis I., Emperor of Germany.

The royal family of Naples is a younger branch of that of Spain, consequently both from the House of Bourbon. Ferdinand IV., King of Naples and the Two Sicilies, was the second son of Charles III., and when his father was removed to the crown of Spain, in 1759, he succeeded to the crown of Naples, which had been confirmed to the junior branches of the royal family of Spain, by the Treaty of Vienna, in 1735.

The kingdom of Sicily, in the eleventh century, was established by two Norman princes, Robert Guiscard, styled Duke of Apulia, and his brother Roger. They recovered Sicily from the dominion of the Saracens, and Roger I. left his fame and his conquests to his son Roger II., the first king of Sicily. Constantia, the only daughter of Roger, carried the Norman blood and the Sicilian kingdom to the House of Suabia, by her marriage with Henry VI., King of the Romans, and Emperor of Germany. Frederick II. was their son, but their legitimate male issue ended with their great-grandson, the unfortunate Conradin. Manfred, an illegitimate son of the Emperor Frederick II., was for some time King of Sicily, and his only daughter, Constantia, carried his rights to the family of Arragon; but Charles, Count of Anjou, a son of Louis VIII., King of France, got possession of the kingdom by conquest, was crowned by Pope Clement IV. (1226), and transmitted it to his descendants, with whom it continued till 1435. Johanna II. constituted Alfonzo V., King of Arragon, her heir: but his claim was disputed by the Duke of Anjou. Alfonzo, however, got possession of the crown, and it remained united with that of Spain till the death of Charles II.

## S A R D I N I A.

**CHARLES FELIX**, King of Sardinia, Duke of Savoy, Piedmont, and Genoa, third son of Victor Amadeus III. and Maria Antonia, daughter of Philip V., King of Spain, succeeded, on the abdication of his elder brother, Victor Emanuel, in 1821.

Berold, or Berthold, Count of Savoy, died about the beginning of the eleventh century, and is the first of this family that appears upon record. His descendants continued to be styled Counts of Savoy till 1416, when Amadeus VIII. was created Duke of Savoy by the Emperor Sigismund. Victor Amadeus II., Duke of Savoy, was made King of Sicily in 1713, and King of Sardinia in 1718. He married Anne Maria, daughter of Philip, Duke of Orleans, and grand-daughter of Charles I., King of England, and their son Charles Emanuel III. succeeded as King of Sardinia in 1730. Victor Amadeus III. was the eldest son of Charles Emanuel, and the father of his present Majesty. The states of Sardinia were long possessed by the family of Guelph.

## D E N M A R K.

**FREDERICK VI.**, King of Denmark, succeeded his father Christian VII. in 1808.

The present royal family of Denmark is descended from Theodoric, Count of Oldenburg, whose great ancestor, Adolphus, Count of Salingsliven, was made Count of Schauenberg, by the Emperor Conrad II., in 1030. Hatwig, the sister and heiress of Adolphus, last Duke of Schlesswick, and Count of Holstein, the tenth in descent from the first Count of Schauenberg, married Theodoric, Count of Oldenburg, in 1422, and their son, Christian I., became King of Denmark in 1440, King of Norway in 1450, and King of Sweden in 1458, and succeeded his cousin as Duke of Schlesswick in 1459. He married Dorothea, the widow of Christopher III., the last of

the male descendants of Harold, the founder of the Danish monarchy, and was succeeded by his son Frederick I. Christian III. was the eldest son of Frederick I., and his son became Frederick II. Christian IV. was the son and successor of Frederick II., and his son became Frederick III. This king married Sophia Amelia, the daughter of George, Duke of Brunswick-Hanover, and their son was Christian V. Frederick IV. was the son of Christian V., and was succeeded by his son Christian VI. Christian VII., the son and successor of Christian VI., married Caroline Matilda, the daughter of Frederick, Prince of Wales, in England, and Frederick VI., his present Majesty, was the only son of that marriage.

#### S W E D E N.

CHARLES JOHN I., King of Sweden and King of Norway, succeeded Charles XIII. as King of Sweden.

Distinguished for his excellent qualities as a man, his great abilities as a general, and humane and liberal conduct as a conqueror, Charles John Bernadotte, during that revolution which agitated Europe for a quarter of a century, rose from among the great mass of his fellow-men, and, like a second Rudolph of Hapsburg, was chosen, for his personal merits, to fill the throne of an ancient kingdom, at a moment, too, when that kingdom, through the madness of its ruler, had nearly lost its political existence. Following the example of his great prototype, who preserved the existence of the German empire, he has, by his prudent and wise government, corrected the evils which the errors of his predecessors on the throne had brought upon the nation, has restored order and good government to the provinces, security, confidence, and increasing commerce to the people; and by the acquisition of Norway, some of that splendour, which in days of old belonged to the Swedish crown.

Sweden and Norway have often been united under the same king, and occasionally Denmark has formed a part of the northern empire. Norway is the more ancient monarchy. It

was established as a kingdom by Harold Harfagre, in 868, and governed by his descendants till 1319. Sweden was scarcely a united kingdom till the reign of Erick Erickson, in 1223. Erick, the second son of Magnus I., and a grandson of Erick Erickson, married Ingeberga, the daughter and heiress of Haguin V., the last male descendant of the first King of Norway, and their son, Magnus II., inherited both kingdoms; but his dynasty ended with his grandson Olavin VI., son of Haguin VI., who, in right of his father, inherited the kingdom of Sweden and Norway, and from his mother Margaret, the eldest daughter and heiress of Walde-mar III., acquired the kingdom of Denmark. The family of Oldenburg, which had acquired the crown of Denmark after the extinction of the male line of the first dynasty, conquered and kept possession of Sweden and Norway for three generations; but, at last, Gustavus Vasa, descended in the female line from Martha, youngest daughter of Erick, the father of Erick Erickson, was elected to the crown in 1523. Elizabeth, the daughter of Charles IX., youngest son of Gustavus Vasa, married a prince of the Palatine family, and their son was Charles Gustavus X. Charles XI. succeeded his father, and his daughter, Hedwig Sophia, married Frederick IV., Duke of Holstein Gottorp. Charles XII., only son of Charles XI., reigned in Sweden till 1718, and was succeeded by his sister Ulrica Eleonora, married to Frederick, hereditary Prince of Hesse Cassel. Frederick, in right of his wife, became King of Sweden, and reigned till 1751, when Christian Augustus, Duke of Holstein Gottorp, was elected to the throne. Though descended from Frederick I., King of Denmark, he had no claim whatever to the crown of Sweden. Gustavus III. was the son of Christian Augustus, and his son and successor, Gustavus IV. (deposed in 1809) was succeeded by his uncle Charles XIII. A change of dynasty is, therefore, no very uncommon occurrence in Sweden.

## PRUSSIA.

**FREDERICK WILLIAM III.**, King of Prussia, Elector of Brandenburg, and Grand Duke of Silesia, succeeded his father, Frederick William II., in 1797.

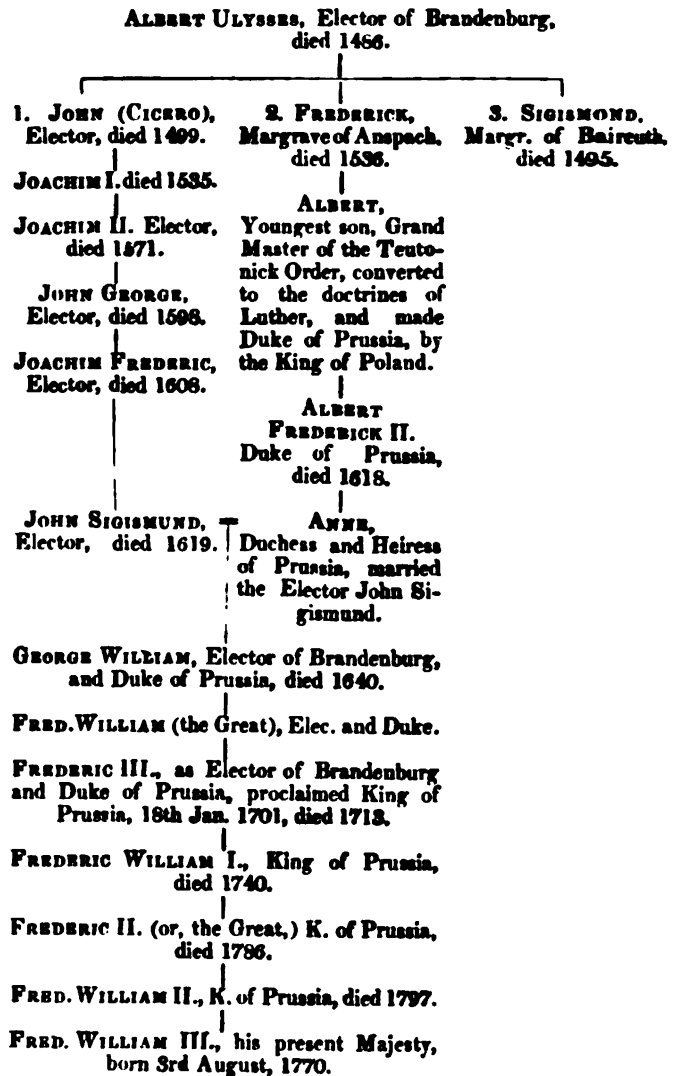
Very early in the eleventh century (1020) Sigismund, the grandson of Albert, the first Count of Ascanio, married his cousin, the heiress of Soltwedel, and became count of that principality. Their son Otho, surnamed the Rich, married Elike, the youngest daughter of Magnus Billung, Duke of Saxony, and his son Albert, surnamed the Bear, got the mark of Brandenburg from the Emperor Conrad IV. in 1152.

Otho, the eldest son of Albert the Bear, inherited Brandenburg at his father's decease, and Bernard, his youngest son, got the Duchy of Saxony, when Henry the Lion was deprived of these states. Otho II., eldest son of Otho I., was the father of John and Otho, who subscribed as witnesses the charter of Brunswick. This family became extinct in the direct male line in 1320, when the Emperor Louis III. gave Brandenburg to his own sons. They, however, left no male issue, and Charles IV. gave these states to his son Wencelaus; and when Wencelaus succeeded to the imperial crown, he gave them to his brother Sigismund. They remained with the Luxemburg brothers from 1373 till 1388, when they were sold to Josse and Procpius, Margraves of Moravia, and the sons of John Henry, second son of John, King of Bohemia, nephews of Charles IV., and cousins of Wencelaus and Sigismund. The last of these princes died in 1411, and Sigismund again disposed of Brandenburg (1417) to Frederick, Burgrave of Nuremberg, the founder of the present dynasty. Frederick, first Burgrave of Nuremberg, was the son of Conrad, Count of Zollern. He died in 1218, and his son and successor, Conrad, married Clementina, daughter of Rudolph, Count of Hapsburg, and sister of the Emperor Rudolph.

When Rudolph of Hapsburg was elected Emperor of Germany, Frederick III., Burgrave of Nuremberg, was despatched by the Electors to carry the intelligence to his uncle. The fourth, in direct male descent from this Frederick,

was Frederick VI., Burgrave of Nuremberg, and first Elector of Brandenburg of this dynasty. Frederick, the first Elector, was succeeded, first, by his eldest son, Frederick II.; but as that prince left no male issue, the electorate devolved upon Albert Ulysses, his youngest son.

Albert Ulysses, Elector of Brandenburg, being the common ancestor of all the existing branches of the royal family of Prussia, we must refer the reader to the annexed Table for their genealogy:—



The first Margraves of Anspach and Baireuth became extinct in the male line in 1608, when Joachim Ernest, one of the numerous sons of the Elector John George, succeeded to their portion of the Brandenburg states, and was eventually succeeded by his youngest son Albert, deceased in 1667. John Frederick, eldest son of Albert, followed him; and, at his death, left the mark of Anspach to his eldest sons, Christian, Albert, and George Frederick; but as those princes left no heirs, their states devolved upon William Frederick, their youngest brother. William Frederick died in 1723, and left his states to his eldest son, Charles William, who died in 1757. Christian Frederick, the eldest surviving son of Charles William, succeeded his father in Anspach in 1757, and his cousin, Frederick Christian, as Margrave of Baireuth in 1769, and in 1791 married Lady Elizabeth Berkeley, Dowager-Countess of Craven. This prince died in 1806, but his widow still survives. The King of Prussia purchased back the sovereignty and property of the States of Anspach and Baireuth in 1801.

#### BAVARIA.

CHARLES LOUIS AUGUSTUS, King of Bavaria, succeeded his father, Maximilian Joseph, in 1825.

The ancestors of this sovereign were originally counts in Bavaria, and traced their origin to Luitpold, or Leopold, a count, that lived in the reign of Henry of Guelph, surnamed of the Golden Chariot. Otho, Count of Wittelsbach, or Wisselbach, was brought up, as a hostage, at the court of the Emperor Conrad III., and became the friend and confidential adviser of his son, Frederick I. (Barbarossa.)

When Henry the Lion was outlawed,\* and plundered of his principalities, Otho, Count of Wittelsbach, received from Frederick the Duchy of Bavaria, and transmitted it to his son, the father of that Otho who signed as a witness the Charter of Brunswick, and who, by his marriage with Agnes, the daughter of Henry, Duke of Saxony, and Count Pala-



tine of the Rhine, acquired the states and dignity of the County Palatine. It was the cousin of the first Count Palatine, (Otho of Wisselbach) that murdered the Emperor Philip in 1207, and his grandson, by the Guelphic princess, was that Duke of Bavaria who succeeded to the empire, as Louis III., in 1314. Rudolph, the elder brother of Louis III., inherited the County Palatine, and formed a distinct line from that of Bavaria for many generations. The electoral dignity was attached to the Palatine branch, and Frederick V., (the husband of Elizabeth Stuart,) was the eleventh in regular male descent from his great ancestor Rudolph.

When Frederick was outlawed, and deprived of the electorate, it was given to Maximilian, Duke of Bavaria, the eighth in descent from the Emperor Louis III. The Bavarian branch, however, became extinct in the male line in 1777, when Maximilian Joseph, the late king, descended from Stephen, a younger son of the Emperor Robert, of the Palatine branch, inherited all that remained of the Duchy of Bavaria and County Palatine.

The Table in the opposite page shews the descent of his present Majesty, from the first Duke of Bavaria.

*Genealogical Table of the Royal Family of Bavaria.*

OTHO, Count of Wittelsback, first Duke of Bavaria, died 1183.

LOUIS, I., Duke of Bavaria, died 1231.

OTHO, Duke of Bavaria, and Count Palatine, died 1253.

LOUIS II., Duke of Bavaria, and Elector Palatine, died 1294.

1. RUDOLPH,  
Elector Palatine,  
died 1319.

2. LOUIS,  
Duke of Bavaria, and  
Emperor,  
died 1347.

ADOLPHUS, Elector Palatine,  
died 1387.

ROBERT II., Elector Palatine,  
died 1398.

ROBERT III., Elector Palatine and  
Emperor, died 1410.

STEPHEN, Palzgrave of Simmern  
and Zweybrücken, died 1459.

FREDERICK,  
Ancestor of Frederick V.

2. LOUIS, Palzgrave  
of Zweybrücken,  
died 1498.

ALEXANDER, Palzgrave of Zweybrücken, died 1514.

LOUIS, Palzgrave of Zweybrücken, died 1532.

WOLFGANG, Palzgrave of Zweybrücken, died 1569.

CHARLES, Palzgrave of Berkenfeldt, died 1600.

CHRISTIAN, Palzgrave of Bruchsweller, died 1654.

CHRISTIAN II., Palzgrave of Berkenfeldt,  
died 1717.

CHRISTIAN III., Palzgrave of Berkenfeldt,  
died 1735.

FREDERICK MICHAEL, Prince of Zweybrücken,  
died 1767.

MAXIMILIAN JOSEPH, Palzgrave of Zweybrücken,  
Elector of Bavaria, Duke of Juliers and Berg, and  
26th December, 1805, King of Bavaria, died 1825.

CHARLES LOUIS AUGUSTUS, his present Majesty,  
born 1786.

## SAXONY.

FREDERICK AUGUSTUS, Elector and King of Saxony, succeeded his elder brother, Frederick Christian Leopold, as Elector of Saxony in 1763, and was proclaimed King of Saxony in 1806.

When Henry the Lion was deprived of the Duchy of Saxony in 1180, it was given to Bernhard, the youngest son of Albert the Bear, Elector of Brandenburg, and it continued with his descendants in the male line till 1409, when it was sold by the Emperor Sigismund to Frederick, surnamed the Warlike, Margrave of Misnia, descended in the female line from the Landgraves of Thuringen. Herman, Landgrave of Thuringen, witness to the charter of Brunswick\*, was descended from a junior branch of the Dukes of Brabant, and was the son of Louis VI., or the Holy, Landgrave of Thuringen. He married Helen, daughter of Otho; the child consequently was the son-in-law of the first Duke of Brunswick and Lüneburg: but as there were no heirs of their marriage, the succession of Thuringen, at the death of Henry Raspo, the uncle of Herman, devolved on, or rather was claimed by Henry, Margrave of Misnia, the son of Jutta, sister to the last Landgrave.

The Margraves of Misnia are first mentioned in history about the end of the twelfth century. Otho, surnamed the Rich, the first upon record, had a son Theodorick, who married the above-mentioned Jutta, Princess of Thuringen, and their son Henry became (as we have said) Landgrave of Thuringen, as well as Margrave of Misnia. Frederick the Warlike was the fifth in descent from this Henry, and is the great ancestor of the present House of Saxony; and as many of the branches of this illustrious house are now most intimately connected with the royal family of England, we shall enter more minutely into their origin and descent, than would have been necessary, had that connexion not existed.

\* See Notes, Vol. II.

first Margrave of Misnia, was one of those of the spoils of Henry the Lion. He gave the States of Misnia to his son Theodo- (who have already mentioned) married Mary Raspo, Landgrave of Thuringen, and obtained the states of Thuringen in full claim (as we have stated in the case of Louis VI., the elder Duke of Brabant, the son-in-law of the Emperor).

which the son of Sophia obtained, and became Landgrave of Thuringen Proper was confirmed to the Margrave of Misnia. Henry, Margrave of Misnia, and Landgrave of Thuringen, died in 1288, and was succeeded by his son Albert, who died in 1314. Frederick I., Margrave of Misnia, and Landgrave of Thuringen, was the son of Albert. He died in 1324, and was succeeded by his son Frederick II. Frederick III. succeeded his father in 1349, and died in 1380, when Frederick IV., or the Warlike, became Margrave of Misnia and Landgrave of Thuringen, and, in 1422, Elector and Duke of Saxony. He died in 1428.

Frederick II., Elector of Saxony, son of Frederick the Warlike, died in 1464, and was succeeded in the Electorate by his eldest son Ernest, and in the Duchy of Saxony by his second son Albert. These princes formed two lines, which have continued distinct to the present time.

Ernest was succeeded, in 1468, by his eldest son John, who died in 1532; and Albert, in 1500, was succeeded, first, by his eldest son George, who died in 1539 without heirs; and, secondly, by his youngest son Henry, who died in 1541.

John, Elector of Saxony, was succeeded by his son John Frederick; and Henry, as Duke of Saxony, by his eldest son Maurice. Charles V. took the Electorate from John Frederick, and gave it to Maurice, in consequence of the support which the former gave to the followers of Luther. John

Frederick died in 1554, and Maurice in 1558. The former was succeeded by his sons, John Frederick, styled Duke of Gotha, and John William, styled Duke of Weimar; and the latter by his youngest brother Augustus, who became Elector of Saxony.

John William, first Duke of Weimar, died in 1573, and was succeeded by his son John; and Augustus, in 1586, was succeeded by his second son Christian.

John, at his death in 1606, divided his states between his three sons, William, Albert, and Ernest. William, as the eldest, inherited Weimar; Albert had Eisenach; and Ernest got the Duchy of Gotha. Christian, at his death, was succeeded in the Electorate by his second son John George I.

William, Duke of Weimar, died in 1662, and was succeeded by his son John Ernest. Albert left no issue. Ernest I. Duke of Gotha, at his death in 1675 left his states to be divided among his seven sons. Frederick, as the eldest, got the Duchy of Gotha, extinct in 1825; Albert, the second, got Coburg, extinct in 1699; Bernhard, the third son, got Meiningen; Henry, the fourth son, got Römheld, extinct in 1710; Christian, the fifth son, got Eisenberg, extinct in 1707; Ernest, the sixth son, got Hilburghausen; and John Ernest, the seventh and youngest, got Saalfeld. John Ernest, Duke of Weimar, had three brothers; two of them, Adolphus William and John George, were Dukes of Eisenach, and Bernhard was Duke of Jena. But the Eisenach branch became extinct in 1741, and Jena in 1690.

John George II. succeeded his father John George I., as Elector of Saxony in 1656.

John Ernest, Duke of Weimar, the eldest prince of the Saxon family, died in 1683, and was succeeded by his eldest son William Ernest; but as that prince had no issue, he was succeeded in 1728 by his brother John Ernest. Bernhard, the first Duke of Meiningen, died in 1706, and was succeeded by his eldest son Ernest Louis.

John Ernest, first Duke of Saalfeld, died in 1729, and was succeeded by his youngest son, Francis Josias.

John George II., Elector of Saxony, was succeeded in 1690

by his son John George III. John George II. had three brothers, that formed distinct lines, but they are now extinct.

John Ernest, Duke of Weimar, died in 1707, and was succeeded by his son Ernest Augustus.

Ernest Louis I., Duke of Meinungen, had two sons, Ernest Louis II. and Charles Frederick, that succeeded him; but, as they left no issue, the next in the line of descent was his brother, Anthony Ulrick, who inherited the Duchy in 1748.

Francis Josias, Duke of Saalfeld, died in 1764, and was succeeded by his eldest son, Ernest Frederick.

John George III. was succeeded in 1691 by his eldest son John George IV.; but as this prince left no issue, the electorate went at his death to his brother, Frederick Augustus, crowned King of Poland in 1697.

Ernest Augustus, Duke of Weimar, died in 1748, and was succeeded by his son Ernest Augustus Constantine.

Anthony Ulrick, Duke of Meinungen, died in 1763, and was succeeded by his eldest son Augustus Frederick; but that prince left no issue, and at his death in 1782, his brother George became Duke of Meinungen.

Ernest Frederick, the eldest son of Francis Josias, Duke of Saalfeld, died in 1800, leaving his states to his eldest son Francis.

Frederick Augustus I., Elector of Saxony and King of Poland, died in 1733, and was succeeded in both states by his son Frederic Augustus II., and he again, at his death in 1763, was succeeded in the electoral dignity only by his eldest son, Frederick Christian Leopold.

Ernest Augustus Constantine, Duke of Weimar, was succeeded at his death in 1758 by his son Charles Augustus, the present Grand Duke of Weimar, born 5th Sept. 1757.

This prince is the head or chief of all the branches of the House of Saxony, Margraves of Misnia, and Landgraves of Thuringen.

George, Duke of Meinungen, died in 1803, and, by the Princess Louisa Eleonora, of Hohenloe-Langenbourg, left issue Bernhard Erick Freund, the present reigning Duke of Mein-

ungen; **ADELAIDE LOUISA**, Duchess of Clarence; and **Ida**, Duchess of Saxe-Weimar Eisenach.

**Francis**, Duke of Saxe-Coburg Saalfeld, died in 1806, and, by the Princess Ernestine of Saxe-Hilburghausen, left issue, **Ernest**, the present reigning Duke; **Ferdinand Augustus**; **MARIA LOUISA VICTORIA**, Dowager-Duchess of Kent; **LEOPOLD GEORGE CHRISTIAN**, Prince Leopold in England, and other children.

**Frederick Christian Leopold**, the eldest son of **Frederick Augustus II.**, Elector of Saxony, and King of Poland, died in the same year with his father, and was succeeded by his eldest son **Frederick Augustus**, born in 1750, Elector of Saxony in 1763, and King of Saxony in 1806;—the reigning sovereign.

#### W Ü R T E M B E R G.

**FREDERICK WILLIAM CHARLES**, King of Würtemberg, succeeded his father **Frederick II.** in 1816.

**Conrad of Beutelsbach**, the first of this family that appears upon record, got the County of Würtemberg from the Emperor **Henry IV.** in 1103, and was succeeded by his son **Ulrick I.**, as Count of Würtemberg, in 1120.

**Henry**, the fourteenth in lineal descent from **Ulrick**, was made Duke of Würtemberg in 1519.

**Frederick II.**, and eighth Duke of Würtemberg, succeeded his father in 1797, and was proclaimed King of Würtemberg in 1805. This prince married for his second duchess, **CHARLOTTE**, Princess Royal of England, the eldest daughter of **George III.**, and sister of **George IV.**, who still survives.

The present king is the son of **Caroline Fredericka Louisa**, daughter of **Charles William Ferdinand of Brunswick**, his first duchess.

There were several branches of this illustrious house that are now extinct.

**Fredericka Sophia**, the daughter and heiress of **Charles**

Christian Erdman (a prince of Würtemberg), Duke of Oels, married Frederick Augustus, brother of Charles William, grandfather of the present Duke of Brunswick. She left the Duchy of Oels to her husband, and at his death in 1805, he bestowed it on his nephew Frederick William, the late gallant Duke of Brunswick, who was killed at Quatre-Bras, 16th June, 1815.

#### HOLLAND, OR, THE NETHERLANDS.

WILLIAM FREDERICK I., King of the United Netherlands, Grand Duke of Luxemburg, Prince of Orange Nassau, Count of Challon, &c., succeeded his father as Prince of Orange Nassau, and hereditary Stadtholder of the United Provinces in 1806; but as the late Prince of Orange had been driven from Holland, and deprived of the Stadtholdership, by the invasion of the French armies in 1795, it was not till 1813 that his Majesty was recalled and made Sovereign Prince of the Netherlands.

In March, 1815, his Majesty was proclaimed King of the United Netherlands, and Grand Duke of Luxemburg. This is a very ancient and distinguished family.

Adelbert, the son of Berengarius II., Marquis of Ivree, and King of Italy, descended from Desiderius, the last of the ancient dynasty of the Lombard kings, had by Gerberga, heiress of the county of Nevers, a son, named Otho William. Gerberga married for her second husband Henry, Duke of Burgundy, the brother of Hugo Capet; and that prince bestowed the states of Franche Comté (a portion of Burgundy) upon Otho William, who, after the death of his step-father, was styled Count of Burgundy.

Stephen III., Count of Burgundy, the sixth in lineal descent from Otho William, married Beatrix, the heiress of Challon, and their son John I. became Count of Burgundy, and Lord of Challon.

John IV., the fifth in descent from John I., married Mary,



the heiress of the principality of Orange, and their son Louis, in 1418, became Prince of Orange, Count of Burgundy, and Lord of Chalon, but his male line became extinct in 1530.

Claudia, the daughter of John V. of Chalon and Orange, and the heiress of her brother Philibert, the last prince of this family, married Henry, Count of Nassau, and their son Rematus inherited the principalities of Orange, Nassau, and Chalon; but as Rematus left no issue, these states at his death (1544) were devised to his cousin William, the son of his father's only brother. This William was the father of Philip William, Maurice, and Henry Frederick, the celebrated princes of Orange, and the great-grandfather of William III., King of England, and last Prince of Orange, of the male line of the original Counts of Nassau.

Albertina Anges, the daughter of Henry Frederick, Prince of Orange, and aunt of King William, married William Frederick, Prince of Nassau Deitz, a branch of the House of Nassau Dellenburg, (which originated with John, a younger brother of William I., Prince of Orange Nassau,) and their son, Henry Cassimir, became Prince of Nassau Deitz, and hereditary Stadtholder of Friesland. Henry Cassimir died in 1696, and was succeeded by his son John William Friso, who, on the death of King William in 1702, inherited the states of Orange, Nassau, and Chalon.

Henry IV., the only son of John William Friso, became Stadtholder of Gueldres in 1722, and Stadtholder of the seven United Provinces in 1748. He married Anne, daughter of King George II. of England, and in 1751 was succeeded by his son William V., Prince of Orange Nassau, and hereditary Stadtholder of the United Provinces. The late Stadtholder died in 1806, at Brunswick, and was succeeded by his eldest son, the present King of the Netherlands.

The House of Nassau, from which his Majesty is descended in the male line, is one of great antiquity, and traced with every degree of certainty to the beginning of the eleventh century, when Walrab, or Walram, Lord of Laurenburg, became Count of Nassau.

Henry the Rich, the seventh generation from this Walrab,

had two sons, Walram and Otho. The latter died in 1392, and was the founder of the Dellenburg branch.

Henry, the fourth in descent from this Otho, was that prince who married Claudia, the heiress of Chailon and Orange, and whose brother William inherited those states at his nephew's death.

John, the second son of this William, became Prince of Nassau Dellenburg, when his elder brother became Prince of Orange, and Ernest Cassimir, the third son of John, was the founder of the family of Deitz, and the common ancestor of his Majesty, now the elder branch of the House of Nassau.

#### H E S S E.

WILLIAM, the tenth Landgrave and second Elector of Hesse, succeeded his father, William George, the late Elector in 1824.

This is one of the most ancient dynasties in Europe. The Elector of Hesse is lineally descended in the female line from Charlemagne, and the still more ancient dynasty of Guelph; and in the male line from Limbert, Count of Louvain in 1000.

Henry, Duke of Brabant, the seventh in lineal male descent from Limbert; Count of Louvain, and Gerberga, heiress of Lorraine, Duchess of Brabant, and Countess of Hainault, (only daughter of Charles, Duke of Lorraine, the last prince of the House of Charlemagne,) married Sophia, daughter of Louis VI., Landgrave of Thuringen, and their son Henry was the first Landgrave of Hesse.

Philip, Landgrave of Hesse, the seventh in lineal descent from the first Henry, was succeeded in Hesse Cassel by his eldest son William; and in Darmstadt by his youngest son George. These lines still continue distinct. The first was the ancestor of the present elector; and the second the founder of the family of the Grand Duke of Darmstadt.

William VI., Landgrave of Hesse Cassel, was succeeded,

in 1663, by his eldest son Charles, as Landgrave of Hesse Cassel, and by a younger son Philip, in Barchfeldt.

The Landgrave of Hesse Rheinfells Rottenburg, is descended from Maurice, the grandfather of William VI.; and the Landgrave of Hesse Homburg from George, first Duke of Darmstadt.

Frederick II., Landgrave of Hesse Cassel, the elder branch of the House of Hesse, died in 1785, and was succeeded by his son William IX., who married Wilhelmina Caroline, daughter of Frederick V. of Denmark, and was the father of the present elector.

Frederick, youngest brother of the late elector, is the father of her Royal Highness the DUCHESS OF CAMBRIDGE.

#### B A D E N.

LOUIS WILLIAM AUGUSTUS, Grand Duke of Baden, succeeded his nephew Charles Louis in 1818.

This distinguished family traces its origin to Gunceline, a Count of Habsburg, about the end of the tenth century, and the founder of the Austrian dynasty.

Herman IV., Margrave of Baden, married Irmingarde, the daughter of Henry, Duke of Saxony, and Count Palatine, and the present grand duke is the nineteenth generation, in lineal male descent, from that prince and princess.

#### M E C K L E N B U R G.

FREDERICK FRANCIS, Grand Duke of Mecklenburg Schwerin, succeeded his uncle Frederick, as Duke of Mecklenburg Schwerin in 1785, and was proclaimed Grand Duke of these states in 1815.

Henry Burwinus, Prince of the Wends (*Wenetti*), married

Matilda, the daughter of Henry the Lion, and their son Henry II. was the founder of the Mecklenburg dynasty.

Henry, surnamed the Lion, great grandson of Henry II. had a son Albert I., that succeeded as Duke of Mecklenburg in 1329; and Adolphus Frederick, the eighth in lineal male descent from Albert I., became Duke of Schwerin in 1628. He was the father of nineteen children. Christian Louis, his eldest son, succeeded him as Duke of Schwerin, and Adolphus Frederick, his youngest son, became Duke of Strelitz.

Christian Louis II., third son of Christian Louis I., was made Duke of Grabow, and his second son Louis, born in 1725, was the father of the present Grand Duke, who, on the death of his uncle Frederick, became Duke of Mecklenburg Schwerin in 1785.

Adolphus Frederick, first Duke of Mecklenburg Strelitz, was eventually succeeded by his youngest son Charles Louis Frederick, who married the daughter of Ernest Frederick I., Duke of Saxe Hilburghausen, and was the father of Charles, the late Duke, and her Majesty, the late QUEEN CHARLOTTE of England, and grandfather of George, the present reigning Duke.

#### A N H A L T.

The family of Anhalt is of great antiquity, and all the existing branches of that illustrious house are descended from Henry, surnamed the Fat, the son of Bernhard, first Duke of Saxony, of the Ascanian family; and Matilda, the daughter of Otho the Child, first Duke of Brunswick and Luneburg. They are, therefore, the true male line of Albert the Bear, and the lineal representatives of the Ascanian blood.

Joachim Ernest, the ninth in descent from Henry and Matilda, inherited the whole of the Anhalt States, and at his death divided them among his five sons, who became the founders of the existing lines of Dessau, Bernburg, Schaumburg, Cothen, and Zerbst.

---

In addition to this long list of princely families, there are several others, both ancient and distinguished, that would, if our limits permitted, claim a separate notice. The principal of these are Hohenzollern, Hohenloe, Lippe and Detmoldt, Schaumberg, Rheuss, Schwartzburg, Waldeck, and Oldenburg: all of them existing, and some of them divided into several branches.

---

**GENEALOGICAL TABLE**  
**OF THE**  
**ANCESTORS OF THE HOUSE OF HANOVER,**  
**FROM THE EARLIEST DAWN OF MODERN HISTORY TO**  
**GEORGE THE FOURTH,**  
**ELECTOR AND FIRST KING OF HANOVER, KING OF THE UNITED KINGDOM OF**  
**GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.**

Number of Generations.	NAMES Of the Princes who carried on the Line of Descent.	Years in which they died.	REMARKS, Containing the Authorities from which their History is taken.
1.	EDICO, King of the Scyrri, Herulii, and Rugii.	A. D. 456	Killed in a battle with the Ostrogoths, on the banks of the river Bollia.—History of the Goths by Jornandes, chap. 53, 54.
2.	ANULPHUS, HUNULPHUS, or GUELPH, from whom this dynasty originates. He settled in Bavaria.	489	ODOACER, the elder brother of this prince, was the conqueror and first barbarian King of Italy.—The chronicles of Marcellinus Cassiodorus, Jornandes, &c. Eugippius Vita Sti. Germani.
3.	OLFIGANDUS, the son of Anulphus, succeeded, but did not take the command of the Bavarians. Served with the Roman army.	560	Procopius of Gaza Annals of the Gothic War, b. iii. iv. Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, A.D. 547.
4.	ULIGAGUS, the son of Olfigandus, continued to serve with Belisarius.	590	Quercitanus Script. Francic. tom. 1, p. 871. Rumiastus, in his Appendix to the History of Gregory of Tours, &c.
5.	CADUINUS, whether the son or grandson of Uligagus, uncertain; lived chiefly in France. Made Duke of Burgundy.	640	The chronicle of Fredegarus, A.D. 635, chap. 10-78. The chronicle of Bobolenus the Monk, in the Acta Sacra Antver. &c. chap. 8.
6.	CATHICUS, the son of Caduinus, was Governor of Alsace.	670	Chronicle of Bobolenus, chap. 23.
7.	WELFO, son of Cathicus.	about 673	Annals by Paul the Deacon, lib. v. cap. 2, 3, 4.

Number of Generations.	NAMES Of the Princes who carried on the Line of Descent.	Years in which they died.	REMARKS, Containing the Authorities from which their History is taken.
8.	WELFO II. (not certain) married the heiress of Friuli, and was invested with that duchy.	A. D. 687	Paulus Diaconus, lib. citat.
9.	ADO, or Adelbert, Marquis of Friuli.	750	The proofs are amply detailed, and the chronicles quoted in the <i>Origine Guelficæ</i> , tom. 1, lib. i. p. 44, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50-54.
.	Otkarius, Duke of Burgundy.		
9.	RUTHARD, or Rodoard, Duke of Bavaria.		
.	ADELBERT, succeeded his father in Italy. Ruthard, the eldest brother, inherited the Bavarian possessions.		
10.	BONIFACIUS, son of Adelbert, Count of Lucca.	about 811	Cosmo della Rena, <i>Series of the Dukes and Marquesses of Tuscany</i> , and other original documents, printed by Scheidius, <i>Orig. Guelficæ</i> . tom. 1, lib. ii. from Muratori and others.
10.	GUELPH, son of Ruthard, Count of Altdorf.	about 823	
11.	BONIFACE II., son of Boniface I., Count of Tuscany.	834	
11.	ETHICO, son of Guelph, Count of Altdorf.	before 830	History of the Empire, Cosmo della Rena Muratori, &c.
.	His sister was Judith, Empress.	843	
.	His brothers, Conrad, Count of Paris,	862	
.	Rudolph, abbot.	866	
12.	ADELBERT I, son of Boniface II., Duke of Tuscany.	886	*.* The two princes, whose families were afterwards united, are numbered alike in the line of descent; and the other princes, descendants of the family, who were coeval with these, are also stated. The reader is referred to the text and notes of this volume for the history of these princes.
12.	GUELPH II., Count of Altdorf, son of Ethico.	880	
.	Rudolph, son of Conrad, Count of Paris, King of Burgundy, A.D. 888.	912	
.	Robert the Strong, brother of Rudolph, Count of Paris, and Count of Anjou.	867	
.	BONIFACE, youngest son Adelbert I.; his elder	927	The direct male line of the Tuscan branch ended with the sons of Adelbert II.

Number of Generations.	NAMES Of the Princes who carried on the Line of Descent.	Years in which they died.	REMARKS, Containing the Authorities from which their History is taken.
		A. D.	
.	brother Adelbert II. had		when the son of Boniface, the younger son
.	two sons, Guido and Lam-		of Albert I., the common ancestors of the
.	bert, Dukes of Tuscany,		Countess Matilda of Tuscany, and Mar-
.	but they left no issue.		quess of Este, became Margrave of Li-
13.	ETHICO II., Count of	910	guria.
	Altdorf.		
	Rudolph II., K. of Bur-	937	
	gundy, and of Italy,		
	son of Rudolph I.		
	Hugh, or Odo, and Ro-	898	
	bert, sons of Robert	923	
	the Strong, Counts		
	and Dukes of Paris.		
14.	ADELBERT III., eldest	not	Those who have disputed the origin of
.	son of Boniface, Count of	certain	Adelbert III. from Boniface, the son of
.	Lucca, succeeded his cou-		Adelbert I., maintain that he was the son
.	sin Lambert as Marquis		of Guido, the eldest son of Adelbert II.;
.	of Liguria.		others say, he was a son of Alberic, first
.			husband of Marozia, and brother of Alberic
.			Patrician, of Rome. He is styled Marquis
.			of Liguria.
14.	HENRY I., surnamed of	925	HENRY, Count of Altdorf, was made
.	the Golden Chariot, Count		Duke of Bavaria, by the Emperor Arnold.
.	of Altdorf, and Duke of		
.	Bavaria, son of Ethico II.		
.	Conrad, King of Bur-	993	CONRAD, King of Burgundy, or Arles,
.	gundy, son of Ru-		reigned for upwards of fifty-six years.
.	dolph II.		
.	Hugh the Great, Duke	956	HUGH succeeded his father, as Duke of
.	of Burgundy, son of		Burgundy, and was Governor of France.
.	Robert, Regent of		
.	France.		
15.	OTBERT, Count Palatine	975	OTBERT, the first Count Palatine, was
.	of Italy, and Marquis of		the undoubted son of Albert III.
.	Liguria, only son of Adel-		
.	bert III.		
15.	RUDOLPH I., Count of	940	RUDOLPH, of Bavaria, his cotemporary,
.	Altdorf, Duke of Nether		is little known beyond his native state.
.	Bavaria. Conrad, King	993	During the lifetime of these princes,
.	of Burgundy, still lived.		Conrad, King of Burgundy, still lived;
.	Hugo Capet succeeded	996	but Hugo Capet had succeeded his father,
.	his father as Duke of		as Duke of Burgundy.
.	Burgundy (956), and		*.* For the descendants of Hugo Capet,
.	King of France (987).		the reader is referred to the Notes.
16.	OTBERT II., Marquis	1014	The reader will find the history of
.	of Liguria, Count Palatine		Otbert II., and all that is known of Ru-
.	of Italy, eldest son of Ot-		dolph II., in the Third Book of the Annals.
.	bert I.		Rudolph, last King of Burgundy, left no



Number of Generations.	NAMES Of the Princess who carried on the Line of Descent.	Year in which they died.	REMARKS. Containing the Authorities from which their History is taken.
16.	<b>RUDOLPH II., Count of Altdorf, and Duke of Nether Bavaria.</b> <b>Rudolph III., last King of Burgundy.</b>	A. D. 1080  1038	male issue, and the kingdom fell to the Emperor, Conrad II., who had married his niece Gisela, the daughter of his sister Gerberga, by Herman II., Duke of Swabia.
17.	<b>ALBERT AZO I., eldest son of Othert II., became Marquis of Liguria, A.D. 1014, and Marquis of Este, from residing in the castle of Este. He had four brothers, Hugh, Adelbert, Othert, and Guido.</b>	1029	The reader will find a full account of the actions of Albert Azo I., and his brothers, in the Third Book of the Annals
17.	<b>GUNALPH II. (sometimes called Wolfard), succeeded his father as Count of Altdorf, and Duke of Nether Bavaria, married Imiga, daughter of Frederick, Count of Luxemburg.</b>	1038	<b>GUNALPH II.,</b> by his marriage with the Princess Imiga, or Irmingarda, acquired a large property in Italy, which he gave with his daughter to her cousin and husband Azo II.
18.	<b>Azo II. Marquis of Este, succeeded his father, A.D. 1029, and married,—</b>	1097	<b>AZO THE SECOND,</b> by his marriage with Cunegunda, united the two lines of the family of Guelph which had been separated during eight generations, from 900 to 1036.
18.	<b>CUNEGUNDA, the only daughter of Guelph II. of Bavaria, whose son, on the death of her only brother, Guelph, Duke of Carinthia, inherited the States of Altdorf, &amp;c.</b>	1044	And their son Guelph, who succeeded his uncle in the allodial states of Altdorf Ravensberg, and others in Bavaria, was made Sovereign Duke of all Bavaria, by Henry IV. 1070.
19.	<b>GUELPH, Count of Altdorf, Duke of Bavaria, married Judith, widow of Tostus, titular King of England. His younger brothers were ancestors of the Dukes of Ferrari and Modena.</b>	1101	This is the first prince of the united families. He was acknowledged the Sovereign Lord of the Italian Principalities. But his younger brothers, Hugo and Fulk, by another mother, inherited those states as fiefs.
20.	<b>HENRY THE BLACK, succeeded his father as Duke of Bavaria, married Wolfilda, eldest daughter of Magnus Billung. His eldest brother Guelph died without heirs male.</b>	Nov. 1127	<b>HENRY THE BLACK</b> succeeded his father as Duke of Bavaria, and on the death of Magnus Billung, he got the greater portion of the Saxon states.
21.	<b>HENRY THE PROUD,</b>	Dec. 1177	<b>HENRY THE PROUD</b> succeeded to the

Number of Generations.	NAMES Of the Princess who carried on the Line of Descent.	Years in which they died.	REMARKS, Containing the Authorities from which their History is taken.
	succeeded his father as Duke of Bavaria, and was created Duke of Saxony, married Gertrude, daughter of the Emperor Lothaire.	A. D. 1139 1143	Duchy of Bavaria on the death of his elder brother, and was invested with the Duchy of Saxony by his father-in-law. Conrad, his elder brother, preferred the retirement of the cloister to the pomp of reigning as Duke of Bavaria. His younger brother Guelph was provided for in Italy, but his only son dying in his youth, this line failed.
	His elder brother Conrad died a monk:	1139	
	His younger brother Guelph was Duke of Spoleto:	1191	
	His nephew Guelph died in his youth.	1168	
22.	HENRY THE LION, Duke of Bavaria and Saxony, married Matilda, Princess Royal of England.	1195 1199	HENRY THE LION succeeded to both duchies, but was deprived of Saxony for a time, and afterwards lost both, together with his uncle's Italian states.
23.	WILLIAM, Prince of Luneburg, married Helen, daughter of Waldemar I., King of Denmark.	1213	WILLIAM, the youngest son of Henry the Lion, never had any other title than that of Prince, or Duke of Luneburg. He died before his elder brothers. He was the only one of the family that left male issue. The Count Palatine had a son that died young, and two daughters, that survived him. Otho, the Emperor, had no issue.
	His eldest brother Henry I. was Count Palatine of the Rhine, and his next brother Otho, Emperor of Germany.—These two left no male heirs.	1227 1218	
24.	OTHO THE CHILD, only son of William, succeeded his uncle Henry as Duke of Luneburg, Duke of Brunswick and Luneburg, in 1235, married Matilda, daughter of Albert II., Margrave of Brandenburg.	1252 1301	OTHO, surnamed the Child, only son of William, Prince of Luneburg, succeeded to the whole of the Brunswick states on the death of his uncle Henry, Count Palatine. He was created Duke of Brunswick and Luneburg, by the Emperor Frederick II., 1235.
25.	ALBERT THE GREAT, Duke of Brunswick, married Elizabeth, daughter of Henry V., Duke of Brabant.	1279 1301	ALBERT, the eldest son of Otho, governed the entire duchy for some time; but the country was afterwards divided between him and his younger brother John, who was the first Duke of Luneburg.
	His younger brother John got the half of the Duchy, and reigned as Duke of Luneburg.	1277	
26.	ALBERT II. (or, the Fat) the second son of Albert I. was Duke of Brunswick-Gottingen, married Reihenza, Princess of Werle.	1318 1314	The Duchy of Brunswick, which remained as the portion of Albert I., was subdivided between his two sons, Henry and Albert II. Henry got the Principality of Grubenhagen, and Albert, Gottingen.

Number of Generations.	NAMES Of the Princes who carried on the Line of Descent.	Years in which they died.	REMARKS. Containing the Authorities from which their History is taken.
27.	<b>MAGNUS I.</b> , seventh son of <b>Albert II.</b> , was Duke of the Principality of Brunswick Proper. He married <b>Sophia Agnes</b> , daughter of <b>Henry</b> , Margrave of Brandenburg.	A.D.  1369	The portion of <b>Albert II.</b> was again divided among his three sons, <b>Otho</b> , <b>Magnus</b> , and <b>Ernest</b> , and formed the Duchies of Gottingen Brunswick, and Wolfenbüttel, which continued distinct for three generations.
28.	<b>MAGNUS II.</b> , (or, <b>Torquatus</b> ) sixth son of <b>Magnus I.</b> , succeeded his father at Brunswick, married <b>Catharine</b> , daughter of <b>Woldemar</b> , Prince of Anhalt.	1363  1350	<b>MAGNUS II.</b> succeeded of right to the States of Lüneburg, on the extinction of the male line of <b>John</b> , brother of <b>Albert I.</b> in 1369; but his claim was disputed by the Dukes of Saxony.
29.	<b>BERNHARD</b> , second son of <b>Magnus II.</b> , succeeded his father, as Duke of Lüneburg. Married <b>Margaret</b> , Princess of Saxony.	1434	A second division of the duchy of Brunswick and Lüneburg was made between the two sons of <b>Magnus II.</b> ; <b>Bernhard</b> got Lüneburg, and <b>Henry</b> , the youngest son, Brunswick.
30.	<b>FREDERICK</b> , second son of <b>Bernhard</b> , became Duke of Lüneburg. Married <b>Magdalene</b> , Princess of Brandenburg.	1478  1458	<b>OTHO</b> , the elder brother of <b>Frederick</b> , enjoyed the states of Lüneburg during his life, but he had no issue, and <b>Frederick</b> succeeded at his death.
31.	<b>OTHO</b> , youngest son of <b>Frederick</b> , died before his father. He married <b>Anne</b> , daughter of <b>John</b> of Nassau.	1471  1514	<b>BERNHARD</b> , the eldest son of <b>Frederick</b> , was put in possession of the duchy by his father, but he died at Celle in 1464, and left no issue; <b>Otho</b> , his brother, then succeeded, as their father remained in a convent; but at <b>Otho's</b> death, <b>Frederick</b> resumed the government, for the benefit of his grandson.
32.	<b>HENRY</b> , only son of <b>Otho</b> , succeeded his grandfather <b>Frederick</b> , as Duke of Lüneburg, 1478. Married <b>Margaret</b> , daughter of <b>Frederick</b> , Elector of Saxony.	1532  1526	
33.	<b>ERNEST</b> , the Confessor, second son of <b>Henry</b> , became Administrator of Lüneburg, in conjunction with his elder and younger brothers, <b>Otho</b> and <b>Francis</b> . Married <b>Sophia</b> , daughter of <b>Henry</b> , Duke of Mecklenburg.	1547  1541	<b>HENRY</b> was banished, on account of the civil wars in Lüneburg and Brunswick, but his sons were allowed to govern the duchy for him; after his death, <b>Otho</b> , the eldest, retired to Harburg, and <b>Francis</b> , the youngest, took the principality of Gifhorn, so that <b>Ernest</b> remained in possession of Lüneburg, which he transmitted to his second son, <b>William</b> . Brunswick Wolfenbüttel, and other states, went to <b>Henry</b> , the eldest son of <b>Ernest</b> .
34.	<b>WILLIAM</b> , Duke of Lüneburg, succeeded his		

Number of Generations.	NAMES Of the Princes who carried on the Line of Descent.	Years in which they died.	REMARKS, Containing the Authorities from which their History is taken.
	father, as Duke of Luneburg, when his elder brother Henry, got the Duchy of Brunswick Wolfenbüttel. William married Dorothea, daughter of Christian III., King of Denmark.	A.D. 1592 1598 1617	This was the third and last division of the duchy of Brunswick and Luneburg; Augustus, the youngest son of Henry, succeeded to the government of Brunswick, and the sons of George inherited Luneburg. There were seven of these sons, and they drew lots which should marry; George proved successful, and had four sons, among whom he divided the states of Luneburg, in two equal portions. Celle was made the capital of the first division, and Hanover that of the other. The eldest was to have his choice, and the second son to govern that portion which the eldest refused. The younger sons were to have no sovereign principality. George Louis, eldest son of Ernest Augustus, married his cousin, the only daughter of his uncle, George William, the eldest surviving son of George, and their only son George Augustus, (George II.) succeeded to the entire division of Luneburg or Celle, and Hanover. The Electorate of Hanover was made a kingdom in 1815.—The entire of the division of Brunswick centred in the grandfather of the present Duke of Brunswick, in 1780.
35.	GEORGE, sixth son of William, resided at Hertzberg and Hanover. Married Anne Elenora, daughter of Louis V., Landgrave of Hesse Darmstadt.	1641 1659	
36.	ERNEST AUGUSTUS, youngest son of George, Bishop of Osnaburg, Duke of Hanover; and in 1692, Elector of Hanover. Married Sophia, daughter of Frederick V., Elector Palatine, by Elizabeth Stuart, Princess Royal of England.	1698 1714	
37.	GEORGE LOUIS, eldest son of Ernest Augustus, Elector of Hanover, and 22nd August, 1714, King of England.	1787	
38.	GEORGE II., (Augustus,) King of England, only son of George I.	1760	
39.	FREDERICK, Prince of Wales, eldest son of George II., died before his father.	1751	
40.	GEORGE III., (William Frederick,) eldest son of Frederick, Prince of Wales, succeeded his grandfather, 1760.		
41.	GEORGE IV., eldest son of George III., succeeded his father, January 20, 1830.		
	Long may he reign!		

HIS late Majesty, George III., married 8th September, 1761, Charlotte, Princess of Mecklenburg Strelitz, and had a family of fifteen children; nine sons and six daughters; two of the sons died while children, but of this great and illustrious family there are still alive:—1. Our present Most Gracious Sovereign, whom God bless and preserve. 2. His Royal Highness, Frederick, Duke of York. 3. His Royal Highness, William Henry, Duke of Clarence. 4. His Royal Highness, Ernest, Duke of Cumberland. 5. His Royal Highness, Augustus, Duke of Sussex; and 6. His Royal Highness, Adolphus, Duke of Cambridge. His Royal Highness, Edward, Duke of Kent, fourth son of his late Majesty, died in 1820, and left by the Princess Louisa Victoria, of Saxe-Coburg Saalfeld, one daughter, the Princess VICTORIA.

The daughters of their late Majesties are, Her Majesty, Charlotte, Dowager Queen of Würtemberg; the Princess Augusta Sophia; Her Royal Highness, Elizabeth, Landgravine of Hesse Homburg; Her Royal Highness, Mary, Duchess of Gloucester, and the Princess Sophia; The Princess Amelia, youngest daughter of their Majesties, died in 1800.

The only brother of the late King that left issue, was His Royal Highness, William Henry, Duke of Gloucester, by Maria Walpole, Dowager Countess of Waldegrave. He had one son and two daughters, His Royal Highness William Frederick, the present Duke of Gloucester, and Her Royal Highness, Sophia Matilda of Gloucester. Caroline Augusta, the second daughter of his Royal Highness, died in childhood.

**GENEALOGICAL TABLE**  
**OF THE**  
**ANCESTORS OF THE PRESENT REIGNING DUKE**  
**OF BRUNSWICK.**

**FROM**  
**ERNEST THE CONFESSOR, TO THE PRESENT TIME.**

Number of Generation.	NAMES Of the Princes who carried on the Line of Descent.	Years in which they died.	REMARKS.
1.	ERNEST, surnamed the Confessor, Duke of Luneburg, and Duke of Celle, the <i>thirty-third</i> generation in the general line of his house. Married Sophia, a Princess of Mecklenburg.	A.D.  1547 1541	The Grubenhagen branch of the family of Brunswick, which commenced with Henry, the eldest son of Albert I., in 1379, became extinct in 1596.—The Wolfenbüttel branch of the second division, which was founded in 1416, by the sons of Henry, youngest son of Magnus II., became extinct in 1614; and as all the subordinate branches of these two lines had previously become extinct, the entire duchy of Brunswick and Luneburg, as at first established in 1235, with the states that had been acquired subsequently, came to be divided among the sons and grandsons of Ernest, Duke of Luneburg, surnamed the Confessor.
2.	HENRY, the eldest son of Ernest the Confessor, succeeded to the states of Brunswick and Wolfenbüttel, when the whole duchy came to be inherited by him and his only brother William, who, as we have elsewhere stated, took the Luneburg division. Married Ursula, Princess of Engern, in Westphalia.	1598 1620	
3.	AUGUSTUS, youngest son of Henry, got the small principality of Hitzacker. Married, secondly, Dorothea, Princess of Anhalt Zerbst; thirdly, Sophia Elizabeth, Princess of Mecklenburg.	1606 1634 1676	The states inherited by Augustus, were divided among his three sons; Rudolph Augustus, Anthony Ulrich, and Ferdinand Albert.  Rudolph Augustus, the eldest son, was made Duke of Brunswick Proper; Anthony Ulrich, the second son got the principality of Wolfenbüttel. The first left no male heir, but the family of the second continued till 1747, and formed two lines, that of Wolfenbüttel and Blankenburg. The whole were united in the family of Ferdinand Albert II. His younger brother, Ernest, got the principality of Bevern, and his youngest son, Charles Frederick, died in 1809.
4.	FERDINAND ALBERT, youngest son of the third marriage of Duke Augustus, succeeded at his father's death, to the small territory of Bevern. Married Christina, Princess of Hesse Cassel.	1687 1708	

Number of Generations.	NAMES Of the Princes who carried on the Line of Descent.	Years in which they died.	REMARKS.
		A.D.	
5.	FERDINAND ALBERT II. succeeded his father as Duke of Bevern, and became Duke of Wolfenbüttel in 1731. Married his cousin, Antoniette Amelia, Heiress of Blankenburg.	1735	FERDINAND ALBERT II. was the father of twelve children ; six sons and six daughters. His second son, Anthony Ulrick, was the father of Iwan III., Emperor of Russia, and his third son, the celebrated Prince Ferdinand, who commanded in the Seven Years' War. After the death of Duke Charles William, who was mortally wounded in the battle of Jena, A.D. 1806, the states of Brunswick and Hanover were taken possession of by the French armies, and incorporated with what was called the kingdom of Westphalia, under Jerome Bonaparte. Frederick William retired to England, and entered the service of his uncle, George III.
6.	CHARLES, eldest son of Ferdinand Albert II., succeeded his father, as Duke of Wolfenbüttel, Duke of Blankenburg, and Duke of Brunswick. Married Charlotte, daughter of Fred. Wm. I., King of Prussia.	1780	
		1801	
7.	CHARLES WILLIAM FERDINAND, eldest son of Duke Charles, succeeded his father in the whole of the Brunswick division of his house. He married Augusta, daughter of Frederick, Prince of Wales and grand-daughter of Geo. II.	16th Novr.	
		1806	
7.		1813	
8.	FREDERICK WILLIAM, youngest son of Duke Charles William, succeeded his uncle, Frederick Augustus, as Duke of Oels, 1805, and was made Regent and Sovereign of Brunswick in 1806, by his father's will ; succeeded his cousin in Bevern, 1804. Married Maria, the daughter of Charles Louis, hereditary Prince of Baden.	1815	
9.	CHARLES WILLIAM FERDINAND succeeded his father, as Duke of Brunswick, Duke of Blankenburg, Duke of Wolfenbüttel, Duke of Bevern, and Duke of Oels, 1815, and is the present reigning Duke. Born 30th October, 1804.	1808	<p>** After the battle of Leipzig, A.D. 1818, Brunswick and Hanover threw off the French yoke, and returned to their legitimate princes.</p> <p>The Electorate of Hanover, being greatly enlarged by the treaty of peace in 1815, was made a kingdom, but Brunswick remains a Sovereign Duchy, under the government of its own illustrious prince. Augustus William, born 1806 (the only brother of the reigning Duke), is a young Prince of great promise.</p>

THOUGH I have not referred to any authorities for the truth and accuracy of my statements, in the more modern portion of the foregoing Genealogical Tables, I beg to assure the reader that I have consulted many private records and documents, and have compared the whole with all that has been printed on the antiquity and history of the House of Brunswick and Luneburg.

I would mention particularly a work that was published about the commencement of the reign of George I., entitled "The History of the Most Serene House of Brunswick-Luneburg in all the Branches thereof, from its Origin to the Death of Queen Anne." The copy I possess is said to be a second edition, printed for J. Pemberton at the Buck and Sun, against St. Dunstan's Church, in Fleet-street. The author is not named, but it is evidently a translation from the fabulous chronicles of the family, and contains all their inaccuracies and unsupported statements, beginning with a genealogy which was manufactured by a lying monk in the seventeenth century, and presented, as a genuine document, to the Elector Ernest Augustus, while he was travelling in Italy.

Also, another work, of a more modern date, entitled "The Memoirs of the House of Brunswick, by Henry Rimius, Aulic Counsellor to the King of Prussia." This work is stated to have been printed for the author in 1750. It is a quarto volume of some merit; and, with respect to the more modern portion of the Brunswick annals, tolerably accurate. But Rimius has adopted the same fabulous account of the origin of the family that was published by the first-mentioned author, and has entered into a full detail of the Roman family of the *ACTII*, from whom the Italian monk has derived the first Marquises of Este; and as these two works were the only authorities accessible to the English reader, their account has passed as genuine with the greater part of our annalists and genealogical writers.

When, however, the *ORIGINES GUELFICÆ* of the learned Scheidius made their appearance in Germany, Mr. Gibbon



obtained a copy, and began a Memoir of the House of Brunswick, which was afterwards published among his post-humous works. This is a valuable record, as far as it goes, and gives a just view of the origin of the family; but even Gibbon's memoir is not free from inaccuracies, and his reasoning is not always borne out by his assumed facts.

In the great mass of materials which were collected by Leibnitz, and afterwards printed, we have many very interesting details, but few that can be absolutely relied upon; and it remained for the indefatigable Scheidius, his successor in the king's library at Hanover, to complete those labours which Leibnitz had commenced. This he has done in a most able manner, and the *Origines Guelficæ*, in five volumes folio, is one of the most laborious and accurate works that ever issued from the press. No source of information has been overlooked: the documents are given in the original, and every disputed point in the early history of the family has been canvassed with a minuteness that renders all further research useless.

The labours of Scheidius end with the sons of Henry the Lion. He has, therefore, been my infallible guide throughout the whole of the first volume of these Annals. In the second volume I have trusted chiefly to unpublished records and original charters, and to the most authentic histories of Germany and France; and though I have not, even in the text, referred often to my authorities, I can with truth assert, that I have not ventured upon the most trifling statement without having full and ample authority for what I have said. If ever these Annals should come to a second edition, and my critics should think it of importance, I shall have great pleasure in giving the whole of my references in full.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

---

LONDON:  
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES,  
Northumberland court.







